



И. Н. Айнутдинова

GRAMMAR TIME
for law students

**with short comments,
training exercises, tests and much more**

*Под общей редакцией доктора
филологических наук, профессора
Г.А. Багаутдиновой*

Учебное пособие
по английскому языку для студентов
юридических факультетов вузов

часть I

Печатается по рекомендации Учебно-методической комиссии и Учёного совета Института языка КФУ

Научный консультант:

академик РАО, доктор педагогических наук, профессор

Г. В. Мухаметзянова

Рецензенты:

доктор педагогических наук, профессор Э.Р. Хайруллина

кандидат педагогических наук, доцент Г.А. Арсланова

Айнутдинова И.Н. GRAMMAR TIME for law students (with short comments, training exercises, tests and much more): учеб. пособие по английскому языку для студентов юридических факультетов вузов: в 4 ч./ И.Н. Айнутдинова: под общ. ред. Г.А. Багаутдиновой. – Казань, Издательство Казанского университета, 2011 – 232 с.

GRAMMAR TIME for law students (часть 1) является первой книгой из серии пособий по грамматике английского языка, состоящей из 4-х частей, для студентов юридических факультетов высшей профессиональной школы. Пособие по грамматике английского языка для студентов юридических специальностей содержит разделы грамматики, необходимые для развития навыков и умений по дисциплине «Иностранный язык» для неязыковых вузов; содержит краткие теоретические материалы (комментарии и инструкции), комплекс упражнений для аудиторной и самостоятельной работы, а также дополнительные разделы по развитию коммуникативных навыков владения иностранным языком в соответствии с образовательными стандартами, установленными для неязыковых вузов РФ, и в соответствии с современной европейской классификацией языковой компетенции по ЯМО (языкам мирового общения).

Пособие может использоваться для повторения, закрепления и совершенствования грамматических знаний и навыков широким кругом лиц, изучающих английский язык; для занятий со студентами юридических факультетов вузов, а также и как образовательный ресурс при обучении студентов, получающих дополнительную квалификацию «Переводчик в сфере профессиональной коммуникации».

The Content:

Introduction	4
Your Grammar Knowledge Criteria	6
Grammar Rules: Articles and Nouns. Articles	7
Your Training Exercises	9
Grammar Rules: Articles and Nouns. Nouns	19
Your Training Exercises	20
Your Self - assessment Test: Articles and Nouns	29
Your Teacher's assessment Test: Articles and Nouns	32
Grammar Rules: Auxiliary verbs	36
Your Training Exercises	38
Grammar Rules: Word order	48
Your Training Exercises	53
Your Self - assessment Test: Auxiliary verbs// Word order	69
Your Teacher's assessment Test: Auxiliary verbs// Word order	74
Grammar Rules: Present Simple tense	81
Your Training Exercises	84
Grammar Rules: Present Continuous (Progressive) Tense	96
Your Training Exercises	97
Your Self - assessment Test: Present Simple/ Present Continuous Tense	107
Your Teacher's assessment Test: Present Simple/ Present Continuous Tense	113
Grammar Rules: Past Simple (Past Indefinite) Tense	118
Your Training Exercises	119
Irregular Verb Dictionary	126
Your Training Exercises	136
Grammar Rules: Past Continuous (Progressive) Tense	146
Your Training Exercises	147
Your Self - assessment Test: Past Simple and Past Continuous Tense	160
Your Teacher's assessment Test: Past Simple and Past Continuous Tense	166
Grammar Rules: Future (Indefinite) Simple Tense	172
Your Training Exercises	173
Grammar Rules: Future Continuous (Progressive) Tense	184
Your Training Exercises	185
Active sentences/ passive sentences/synonyms/ antonyms/ suffixes/ prefixes/ compound words	192
Your Self - assessment Test: Future Simple and Future Continuous	208
Your Teacher's assessment Test: Future Simple and Future Continuous	214
Your Final Evaluation Test	218
Answers and Solutions	221
References – Список использованной литературы	229
What you should now and how you would score	231

From the author:

Introduction: Why is Grammar so Important to You?

<http://grammar.about.com> "Some Questions and Answers About Grammar"

DEAR FRIENDS,

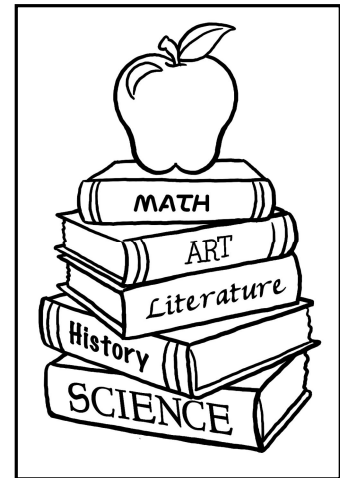
We often face the question: WHY DOES GRAMMAR MATTER?

One of the most lucid and sensible answers to this question appeared a few years ago in a position statement on the teaching of grammar in American schools. Published by the National Council of Teachers of English (NCTE), the report is blessedly free of educational cant. Here's how it begins:

"Grammar is important because it is the language that makes it possible for us to talk about language. Grammar names the types of words and word groups that make up sentences not only in English but in any language. As human beings, we can put sentences together even as children – we can all do grammar. But to be able to talk about how sentences are built, about the types of words and word groups that make up sentences – that is our knowledge about grammar. And knowing about grammar offers a window into the human mind and into our amazingly complex mental capacity. People associate grammar with errors and correctness. But knowing about grammar also helps us understand what makes sentences and paragraphs clear and interesting and precise. Grammar can be part of literature discussions, when we closely read the sentences in poetry and stories. And knowing about grammar means that all languages and all dialects follow particular grammatical patterns."

Teaching grammar will not make writing errors go away. Students make errors in the process of learning, and as they learn about writing, they often make new errors, not necessarily fewer ones. But knowing basic grammatical terminology does provide students with a tool for thinking about and discussing sentences. And lots of discussion of language, along with lots of reading and lots of writing are the three ingredients for helping students write in accordance with the conventions of English standards.

WE WISH YOU ALL SUCCESS AND HIGH SCORES IN MASTERING OF YOUR ENGLISH LANGUAGE SKILLS AND KNOWLEDGE. SO, WELCOME ABOARD AND LET'S DISCOVER THE CHALLENGING GRAMMAR WORLD TOGETHER. IT'S GRAMMAR TIME!



YOUR FIRST TERM ACADEMIC GRAMMAR SYLLABUS

I. Communicative Grammar

1. Articles and Nouns

- A / an and the
- Noun. Possessive forms of nouns ('s, .. of ..)

2. Auxiliary verbs

- be: am /is / are; was /were
- do: do /does; did
- have: have /has; had



3. Word order in statements, questions and short answers

4. Tense forms (active)

- Present simple.
- Present continuous
- Present continuous / present simple. Action and state verbs
- Past simple. Contrasting Past and Present: used to (do)
- Past continuous
- Past continuous / Past simple
- Future Simple / Future Continuous

5. The Passives

- differences between Active and passive
- simple tenses passive
- continuous tenses passive

II. Lexicology and Phraseology

1. Word-building

- Common suffixes for nouns, verbs, adverbs, adjectives
- Common prefixes and suffixes to express opposition
- Compound words

2. Sense Relations between Words

- Synonyms
- Antonyms



Your Grammar Knowledge Criteria

Your grammatical awareness of English as of the learners of English as a foreign language could be evaluated both in receptive and productive levels according to the following criteria:

1. Your level of knowledge and ability to interpret different data connected with grammar;
2. Your ability to prove the validity of the data, which is truly exercised if:
 - You are able to appropriately select and correctly judge the ungrammatical or syntactically ill-formed sentences or other phenomena;
 - You are able to appropriately select and correctly judge the grammatical or syntactically correct sentences or other grammatical phenomena.
3. Your ability to analyze the data, which is truly exercised if:
 - You show the grammatically correct or syntactically well-formed use of English;
 - The problem is pointed and corrected via your own judgments and/or with the help of reference books/ or your tutor's instructions/ or any sufficient Internet resources and by using appropriate terminology;
 - You are able to find the underlying reasons for the uses of grammatical structures and discuss them and then edit them and comment on them to prove them with possible underlying reasons;
 - You are able to enhance your knowledge from a holistic perspective.
4. Your ability to use your English grammar knowledge while presenting the outputs in written and oral forms.
5. Your ability to use your English grammar knowledge along with the avoidance of spelling mistakes in the papers or pronunciation errors in oral speech.
6. Your ability to use your English grammar knowledge to follow all the instructions given so as to show a well-organized style of education.
7. Your ability to use your English grammar knowledge so as to cope with all exercises, tests (self-assessment; your teacher's; your final) and evaluation papers presented in this educational resource.

With the reference to the above mentioned you may score as much as:

Nº	THE CRITERION	POINTS/100	TOTAL
1	Knowledge and ability to interpret data	10	10x1=10
2	Knowledge and ability to correctly judge	10	10x1=10
3	The analysis of the data	10	10x1=10
4	The ability to use your English grammar	10	10x1=10
5	Spelling/ pronunciation/ well-organized model	10	10x1=10
6	Exercises/ Self-assessment tests	TE-2; SA-2	10x2+5x2=30
7	Teacher's/ Final Test	TA-3; FT-5	5x3+5x1=20



Grammar Rules: Articles and Nouns

Article (grammar)

An *article* (abbreviated – art) is a word that combines with a noun to indicate the type of reference being made by the noun. Articles specify the grammatical definiteness of the noun, in some languages extending to volume or numerical scope. Among the classical parts of speech, articles are considered a special category of adjectives. Some modern linguists prefer to classify them within a separate part of speech, determiners.

There are three articles in English: the adjectives A, AN, and THE. Articles are usually characterized as either definite or indefinite. THE is called the definite article as it is used to indicate something specific; whereas, A and AN are called the indefinite articles as they are used to indicate something unspecific and are used before a singular noun that has a plural form. A is used before a consonant sound and AN is used before a vowel sound. The *Zero Article* is when a noun is used without A, AN, and THE. The *Negative Article* specifies none of its noun, and can thus be regarded as neither definite nor indefinite. On the other hand, some consider such a word to be a simple determiner rather than an article. In English, this function is fulfilled by NO.

THE	
Used	Not Used
Before nouns of which there is only one: "The earth is round."	Before countries, towns, proper names: "Charlie lived in Chicago in America".
Before a noun which has become definite as a result of being mentioned a second time: "We saw a good film last night. It was the film you recommended."	Before abstract nouns: "Jealousy can be dangerous."
Before a noun made definite by the addition of a phrase or clause: "The woman dressed in black."	Before parts of the body and articles of clothing — these normally prefer a possessive adjective: "Lift your left arm." "He removed his hat."
Before a noun which, by reason of locality, can represent only one particular thing: "There's a bee in the kitchen."	

Before superlatives and "first", "second" and "only": "The longest river in the world."	
Before singular nouns used to represent a class of objects: "The donkey is a very obstinate animal."	
Before an adjective used to represent a class of persons: "That tax hurts the rich."	
Before names of seas, rivers, chains of mountains, groups of islands and plural names of countries: "the Pacific Ocean, the Thames, the Andes, the West Indies, the Netherlands"	
Before musical instruments: "She plays the piano"	

A and AN	
Used	Not Used
Before a singular noun which is countable when it is mentioned for the first time and represents no particular person or thing: "A horse is a noble animal."	Before plural nouns. "Horses are noble animals."
Before a singular countable noun which is used as an example of a class of things: "A book is something you read."	Before uncountable nouns "Milk is good for you."
With a noun complement, including names of professions: "She is a doctor, he became a famous actor."	Before abstract nouns. "Fear is natural."
In expressions of price, speed, ratio: "60 miles an hour, 4 hours a day, 30p a box"	Before names of meals except when preceded by an adjective. "We had a late breakfast and decided to miss lunch."
With "few" and "little": "a few people, a little sugar"	
In exclamations before singular, countable nouns: "What a pity! What a sunny day!"	
It can be placed before Mr., Mrs., Miss, Ms + surname: "a Mr. Brown phoned today."	



Your Training Exercises



Exercise A. Choose the correct article **a, an, the** or **zero** article (mark it by **x**) to complete the given sentences. Explain the usage!

Hi John, You might have already heard from _____¹ Mr. Rodent that now I work as _____² lawyer in Goodwin Procter LLP, which is _____³ huge national law firm with _____⁴ growing international presence. Goodwin Procter is one of _____⁵ leading law firms in _____⁶ United States, with _____⁷ team of 850 attorneys serving clients from _____⁸ locations on _____⁹ East and West Coasts, as well as in _____¹⁰ Europe and Asia. Our corporate headquarters are in _____¹¹ Boston, where _____¹² firm was originally founded in _____¹³ 1912, but we have to travel worldwide to meet _____¹⁴ needs of _____¹⁵ clients. My life is _____¹⁶ busy but really challenging adventure. Look, I came back to _____¹⁷ USA last Monday. We left _____¹⁸ Rome, flew over _____¹⁹ Alps and made a quick stop in _____²⁰ London. There we went shopping in _____²¹ Harrods, visited _____²² Tower and enjoyed _____²³ sunny afternoon in _____²⁴ Hyde Park. I certainly wanted to visit _____²⁵ St. Paul's Cathedral, but Susan, my wife, is _____²⁶ catholic though she almost never goes to _____²⁷ church. This time she decided that _____²⁸ Cathedral is not _____²⁹ right place for her because of _____³⁰ Anglican denomination, so due to _____³¹ Susan's crazy or even ridiculous behavior we missed _____³² chance to enjoy _____³³ one of _____³⁴ London's most famous and recognizable sights. Susan still works as _____³⁵ secretary for _____³⁶ multinational Company but quite often behaves herself pretty stupid. Sometimes it's just _____³⁷ ordeal to get along with _____³⁸ her. So, on _____³⁹ following day we left for _____⁴⁰ New York. _____⁴¹ time on _____⁴² board wasn't boring as there were _____⁴³ two films to watch on _____⁴⁴ monitor. _____⁴⁵ people on _____⁴⁶ plane were all _____⁴⁷ Italian. Before we landed at _____⁴⁸ JFK airport, we saw _____⁴⁹ Statue of Liberty, _____⁵⁰ Ellis Island and _____⁵¹ Empire State Building. _____⁵² hotel we stayed in was on _____⁵³ corner of _____⁵⁴ 42nd Street and _____⁵⁵ 5th Avenue. I don't like _____⁵⁶ hotels very much, but I didn't have _____⁵⁷ time to rent _____⁵⁸ apartment. Please say _____⁵⁹ hello to _____⁶⁰ Peter and Mandy. Hope to see you soon in _____⁶¹ Boston.

Yours, Peter Harrington.



Exercise B. Mark *the* or *zero article* by the tick when using the names of the geographical features and places listed below:

№	Geographical features and places	The	Zero
1	Rivers		
2	Mountains		
3	Mountain ranges or groups		
4	Groups of islands		
5	Deserts		
6	Continents		
7	Towns		
8	Cities		
9	Villages		
10	Parks		
11	Zoos		
12	Seas		
13	Oceans		
14	Lakes		
15	Countries whose name is a single word		
16	Countries whose name includes words like <i>republic</i> or <i>united</i>		
17	Streets		
18	Cinemas		
19	Theatres		
20	Museums		
21	Hotels		
22	Ships		
23	Churches		
24	Cathedrals		
25	Airports		
26	Train stations		
27	Bus stations		
28	Squares in towns and cities		
29	Underground or subway stations		



Exercise C. Check the names of the geographical features, places and the international organizations. Put in **the** or **zero** article:

1. Five _____¹ US states have sued _____² federal government and _____³ Chicago's water authority seeking action to stop _____⁴ Asian carp invading

_____ ⁵ Great Lakes.

2. Officials from _____ ⁶ INTERPOL and _____ ⁷ United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime in _____ ⁸ Bangkok, _____ ⁹ World Customs Organization's Regional Intelligence Liaison Office in _____ ¹⁰ Beijing, and _____ ¹¹ CITES Secretariat in _____ ¹² Geneva attended a workshop in _____ ¹³ Hanoi, _____ ¹⁴ Viet Nam, to discuss enforcement issues.

3. The police forces in each of _____ ¹⁵ 16 Federal States are organized differently, because police duties fall within the jurisdiction of _____ ¹⁶ Federal States, as laid down in the Basic Law of _____ ¹⁷ Federal Republic of Germany.

4. _____ ¹⁸ United Nations Convention against illicit traffic in narcotic drugs and psychotropic substances was adopted in _____ ¹⁹ Vienna in 1988.

5. _____ ²⁰ World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that up to 1% of medicines available in _____ ²¹ developed world are likely to be counterfeit while this figure rises up to 10% globally, but in some areas of _____ ²² Asia, Africa and Latin America counterfeit goods can form up to 30% of the market.

6. The practice of pharmacy in _____ ²³ Canada is regulated by _____ ²⁴ provinces, and any licensed pharmacy that offers Internet services must meet the standards of practice within its own province.

7. Recent estimates by _____ International Labor Organization show that trafficking in women for sexual exploitation affects every region in _____ ²⁵ world, either as a source, transit or destination country,

8. Commercial sexual exploitation of children in tourism has been apparent in _____ ²⁶ Asia for many years and has now taken hold in _____ ²⁷ Africa as well as _____ ²⁸ Central and South America.

9. Jeffrey Alexander Sterling, a former CIA officer, was arrested in _____ ²⁹ St. Louis on charges that he illegally disclosed national defense information and obstructed justice.

10. Luis Armando Pena Soltren was sentenced to 15 years in prison for his participation in the November 24, 1968 hijacking of _____ ³⁰ Puerto Rico-bound _____ ³¹ Pan American flight 281 to _____ ³² Havana, _____ ³³ Cuba.

11. _____ ³⁴ FBI Director Robert S. Mueller, III, along with _____ ³⁵ local area law enforcement officials, opened _____ ³⁶ Orange County Regional Computer Forensics Laboratory (OCRCFL) in a ribbon-cutting ceremony in _____ ³⁷ Santa Ana, _____ ³⁸ California.

12. A jury returned an indictment charging Phillip A. Hamilton, a former member of _____ ³⁹ Virginia House of Delegates with allegedly soliciting

employees of _____⁴⁰ Old Dominion University for a paid position at the same time he was introducing legislation to fund the position.

13. Seventeen individuals were arrested and charged with various narcotics trafficking and firearms offenses related to the large-scale distribution of heroin, cocaine, and crack cocaine in _____⁴¹ Bridgeport and _____⁴² Hartford, _____⁴³ Connecticut and _____⁴⁴ Springfield, _____⁴⁵ Massachusetts.

14. _____⁴⁶ Internet Crime Complaint Center (IC3) is a partnership between _____⁴⁷ Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI), _____⁴⁸ National White Collar Crime Center (NW3C), and _____⁴⁹ Bureau of Justice Assistance (BJA).

15. _____⁵⁰ Europol is _____⁵¹ European Law Enforcement Agency which aims at improving the effectiveness and co-operation of the competent authorities in _____⁵² Member States in preventing and combating terrorism, unlawful drug trafficking and other serious forms of organized crime.

16. The personal data of _____⁵³ EU citizens is a valuable illicit commodity that is being traded in a criminal digital underground economy and turned into cash.

17. _____⁵⁴ European Union is a key target for cybercrime because of its advanced internet infrastructure, high number of internet users and widespread use of electronic banking and payment systems.

18. _____⁵⁵ Republic of Korea is near Japan and China.

19. _____⁵⁶ Azores are a group of islands in the Atlantic.

20. Investigating and prosecuting acts of maritime piracy is far from simple when it comes to determining who should take the lead: a hijacked ship may be owned by a Dutch shipping company, flagged in _____⁵⁷ Panama, and finally liberated by _____⁵⁸ German Special Forces.




Exercise D: Write the name of the European country; its capital; the nationality noun + adjective of the citizen of the member State:

Example: A *Finnish* student lives in *Finland* in *Helsinki*. He is a *Finn*.

No	Country	Capital city	Adjective	Nationality
1	Germany	Berlin	German	A German
2	France			
3	Italy			
4	Belgium			

5	Netherlands			
6	Luxemburg			
7	United Kingdom			
8	Denmark			
9	Ireland			
10	Greece			
11	Portugal			
12	Spain			
13	Austria			
14	Finland			
15	Sweden			
16	Poland			
17	Czech Republic			
18	Hungary			
19	Slovakia			
20	Lithuania			
21	Latvia			
22	Estonia			
23	Slovenia			
24	Malta			
25	Cyprus			
26	Turkey (candidate)			
27	Bulgaria			
28	Romania			

 **Exercise E.** Put the following words from the box into the correct categories of the chart given below:



Nile; Caspian Sea; United Arab Emirates; Pamirs; Baltimore Museum of Art; Sheraton; Tasmania; Melbourne; Luna Park; Indian Ocean; Hilton; Netherlands; North Sea; Paris Orly; Tottenham Court Road; Guinea-Bissau; Lake Winnipeg; New York State; Andes; United Kingdom; Cheviot Hills; Caribbean Sea; Holiday Inn; Seychelles; Pacific Ocean; Baikal; Hawaiian Islands; Alps, Red Sea; Cape of Good Hope; Europe; Mount Etna; Bodensee; Mallorca; Grand Canyon; British Museum station; Marriott; London Heathrow; Sea of Azov; Titicaca; Sydney Opera House; Canary Islands; El Retiro Park; Miami Art Museum; Hudson Bay; Harbor Place Amphitheater; Inner Harbor; United States; Pratt Street; Greenland; Himalayas; Palermo; Issyk-Kul; Michigan; London-Gatwick; Mumbai; Czech

Republic; Danube; Southern Ural Mountains; Nautilus; Orinoco; Appalachians; northeast Burma; Lesotho; Gulf of Mexico; Sheremetyevo; Africa; Baltic Sea; Moscow Peak; Brazil; Vancouver; Asia; Channel Islands; China; Great Smoky Mountains National Park Far East; West Indies Federation; Mount Elbrus; Ashmore and Cartier Islands; Guadeloupe; New Zealand; Mayflower; Antigua and Barbuda; Yerevan; Dominican Republic; Riyadh; New York City; Middle East; Mississippi; Russian Federation; Titanic; Christian Church; Domodedovo; Kon-Tiki; Paris De Gaulle; Hyde Park; Madame Tussauds in London, UK; National Railway Company of Belgium; Mont Blanc; Pyrenees; Croatia; Scottish Highlands; Times Square; Ritz-Carlton New York; Central Park; Los Angeles; Florida; West Palm Beach; St. Paul`s Cathedral; Sheraton; Kensington; Cambridge; Volgograd; Acapulco; Broadway; Calypso; Pennsylvania Avenue; Oxfordshire; Philippines; Mount Everest; Punjab; Ritz; Sahara; Texas; Thames; India; Argo; Czechia; Ural Mountains; Kilimanjaro.

№	Category	Notions	the	zero
1	Ships		√	
2	Parks, Zoos			√
3	Continents, states and most countries			√
4	Countries (names include unions or plurals)		√	
5	Towns, cities and villages			√
6	Most streets, squares in towns and cities			√
7	Airports, train/ bus/ underground/ subway stations			√
8	Churches and cathedrals			√
9	Geographical features/ geographical regions		√	
10	Lakes, islands and volcanoes			√
11	Mountains			√
12	Mountain ranges/groups, island groups, deserts		√	
13	Hotels		√	
14	Rivers, seas and oceans		√	
15	Cinemas, theatres, museums		√	



Exercise F. Put **the, a, an** or **zero** (mark it by **x**) article to fill in the gaps to complete the given sentences. Give a summary of the text:

Charlie is ___¹ lawyer and his wife, Maria is ___² artist. One of ___³ main differences between ___⁴ two is that Charlie has no imagination well perhaps ___⁵ little whereas Maria has ___⁶ most vivid imagination you could think of. Now ___⁷ imagination is ___⁸ essential quality if you're

___⁹ artist but sometimes it can lead to ___¹⁰ problems. Take ___¹¹ night before last, for ___¹² example. It was ___¹³ fine summer night when you could see ___¹⁴ moon and ___¹⁵ stars quite clearly; it was shortly before ___¹⁶ longest day of ___¹⁷ year. Charlie was sitting in ___¹⁸ deckchair enjoying ___¹⁹ warm summer air when he felt something touch his shoulder; it was ___²⁰ Maria's hand and he could tell immediately she was ___²¹ little worried about something. He had noticed this sensation ___²² hundred times before. He asked her what ___²³ matter was and she replied that there was ___²⁴ strange thing on ___²⁵ jacket that was hanging in ___²⁶ bedroom. Now you must remember that they had both lived in ___²⁷ West Indies and had seen ___²⁸ lot of strange creatures in their house before. But now they were living in ___²⁹ England and so Charlie just laughed and said he would have ___³⁰ look at ___³¹ "thing". He left ___³² garden and made his way to ___³³ bedroom. He could see ___³⁴ jacket hanging in ___³⁵ bedroom and went up to it to have ___³⁶ closer look at ___³⁷ "thing". ___³⁸ moment he touched it, ___³⁹ thing sprang into ___⁴⁰ life. Now Charlie experiences ___⁴¹ fear like ___⁴² rest of us but when this creature opened its wings, he jumped out of his skin and ran screaming from ___⁴³ room like ___⁴⁴ small child doing about 100 miles ___⁴⁵ hour. For ___⁴⁶ moment ___⁴⁷ next-door neighbors thought that Charlie was murdering his wife because of ___⁴⁸ noise they could hear. In fact it was ___⁴⁹ bat that was frightened itself and it fluttered its wings and flew from one side of ___⁵⁰ bedroom to ___⁵¹ other. Eventually Charlie managed to trap ___⁵² bat in ___⁵³ box. Eventually Maria, who had been playing ___⁵⁴ guitar while Charlie was upstairs, asked Charlie if he had found out what ___⁵⁵ thing was. "Oh, nothing to worry about", he said casually hoping that ___⁵⁶ terror could not be seen in his eyes, "it was just ___⁵⁷ bat."



Exercise G. Choose the appropriate (correct) article or zero article from the given multiple-choice options:

1. Before you sign ___¹ to join our company, read ___² carefully.
 - ¹ a) a agreement; b) an agreement; c) the agreement; d) agreement
 - ² a) a contract; b) an contract; c) the contract; d) contract
2. ___³ recommend to thoroughly check out several companies to completely meet your needs before you join one.
 - ³ a) a job search experts; b) an job search experts; c) the job search experts; d) job search experts

3. Agency staffing companies are specialized in placing _____⁴ who matches _____⁵ of _____⁶.

⁴ a) a applicant; b) an applicant; c) the applicant; d) applicant

⁵ a) a required skill sets; b) an required skill sets; c) the required skill sets; d) required skill sets

⁶ a) a open position; b) an open position; c) the open position; d) open position

4. If you are interested in careers for _____⁷ who like to talk then you need to realize that these jobs require _____⁸ as well as _____⁹.

⁷ a) a people; b) an people; c) the people; d) people

⁸ a) a certain specific skills; b) an certain specific skills; c) the certain specific skills; d) certain specific skills

⁹ a) a solid education; b) an solid education; c) the solid education; d) solid education

5. People often say that _____¹⁰ 'job satisfaction' is _____¹¹, depending mostly on your personal interests.

¹⁰ a) a term; b) an term; c) the term; d) term

¹¹ a) a paradox; b) an paradox; c) the paradox; d) paradox

6. For example, if you are inclined towards _____¹², you will probably not enjoy careers where you need to interact with _____¹³ on a daily basis.

¹² a) a machines and technology; b) an machines and technology; c) the machines and technology; d) machines and technology

¹³ a) a public; b) an public; c) the public; d) public

7. Are you looking for _____¹⁴ or placement in an important position?

¹⁴ a) a immediate recruitment; b) an immediate recruitment; c) the immediate recruitment; d) immediate recruitment



Exercise H: Revise your grammar: A jury trial in England & Wales. Put **a, an, the** in each space or leave the space blank (**zero article**):

1. ___¹ jury trial (or trial by ___² jury) is ___³ legal proceeding in which ___⁴ jury either makes ___⁵ decision or makes ___⁶ findings of ___⁷ fact which are then applied by ___⁸ judge.

2. It is distinguished from ___⁹ bench trial, in which ___¹⁰ judge or ___¹¹ panel of ___¹² judges make all ___¹³ decisions.

3. ___¹⁴ use of ___¹⁵ jury trials evolved within ___¹⁶ common law systems



rather than ___¹⁷ civil law systems.

4. ___¹⁸ jury trials are of far less importance (or of no importance) in ___¹⁹ countries that do not have ___²⁰ common law system.

5. ___²¹ juries usually weigh ___²² evidence and ___²³ testimony to determine ___²⁴ questions of ___²⁵ fact, while ___²⁶ judges usually rule on ___²⁷ questions of ___²⁸ law.

6. ___²⁹ jury determination of ___³⁰ questions of ___³¹ law, sometimes called ___³² jury nullification, may lead to ___³³ overturning of ___³⁴ verdict by ___³⁵ judge.

7. In ___³⁶ England and Wales (which have ___³⁷ same legal system), ___³⁸ minor criminal cases are heard without ___³⁹ jury in ___⁴⁰ Magistrates' Courts.

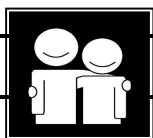
8. ___⁴¹ middle ranking (or ___⁴² triable either way) offences may be tried by ___⁴³ magistrates or ___⁴⁴ defendant may elect ___⁴⁵ trial by jury in ___⁴⁶ Crown Court.

9. ___⁴⁷ serious (or ___⁴⁸ indictable) offences, however, must be tried before ___⁴⁹ jury in ___⁵⁰ Crown Court.

10. All ___⁵¹ juries consist of 12 people between 18–70 years of ___⁵² age, selected at ___⁵³ random from ___⁵⁴ register of ___⁵⁵ voters.

11. In ___⁵⁶ past ___⁵⁷ unanimous verdict was required.

12. This has been changed so that, if ___⁵⁸ jury fails to agree after ___⁵⁹ given period, at ___⁶⁰ discretion of ___⁶¹ judge they may reach ___⁶² verdict by ___⁶³ the majority of 10, so as to prevent ___⁶⁴ jury tampering in ___⁶⁵ cases on ___⁶⁶ organized crime.



Have Fun! Lawyer Jokes!

● A linguistics professor was lecturing to his class one day. "In English," he said, "A double negative forms a positive. In some languages, though, such as Russian, a double negative is still a negative. However, there is no language wherein a double positive can form a negative." A voice from the back of the room piped up, "Yeah, right."

● A judge walks out of his chambers laughing his head off. A colleague approaches him and asks why he is laughing. "I just heard the funniest joke in the world!" "Well, go ahead, tell me!" says the other judge. "I can't - I just gave a guy ten years for it!"

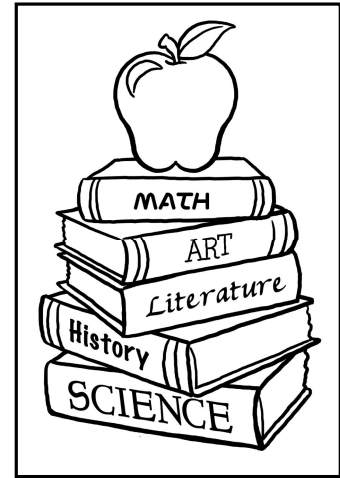
● Women are unpredictable. Before marriage, she expects a man, after marriage she suspects him, and after death she respects him.



It is interesting to know

<http://www.englishclub.com/grammar/grammar-what.htm>

1. Grammar is the system of a language. People sometimes describe grammar as the "rules" of a language; but in fact no language has rules. If we use the word "rules", we suggest that somebody created the rules first and then spoke the language, like a new game. Except the invented languages like Esperanto, but if Esperanto were widely spoken, its rules would soon be very different. But languages did not start like that. Languages started by people making sounds which evolved into words, phrases and sentences. No



commonly-spoken language is fixed. All languages change over time. What we call "grammar" is simply a reflection of a language at a particular time.

2. Do we need to study grammar to learn a language? The short answer is "no". Very many people in the world speak their own, native language without having studied its grammar. Children start to speak before they even know the word "grammar". But if you are serious about learning a foreign language, the long answer is "yes", grammar can help you to learn a language more quickly and more efficiently. It's important to think of grammar as something that can help you, like a friend. When you understand the grammar (or system) of a language, you can understand many things yourself, without having to ask a teacher or look in a book. So think of grammar as something good and positive, something that you can use to find your way – like a signpost or a map.

3. Here some quotes about Grammar:

- Like everything metaphysical the harmony between thought and reality is to be found in the grammar of the language. (*Wittgenstein, Ludwig*)

I never made a mistake in grammar but one in my life and as soon as I done it I seen it. (*Sandburg, Carl*)

- Grammar, which can govern even Kings. (*Moliere*)

- Grammar is a piano I play by ear. All I know about grammar is its power. (*Didion, Joan*)

- From now on, ending a sentence with a preposition is something up with which I will not put. (*Churchill, Winston*)

- No iron can pierce the heart with such force as a period put just at the right place. (*Babel, Isaac*)



Grammar Rules: Articles and Nouns

Nouns

A *noun* is the name of a person, place, thing, or idea. Whatever exists, we assume, can be named, and that name is a noun. A *proper noun*, which names a specific person, place, or thing (Carlos, Queen Marguerite, Middle East, Jerusalem, Malaysia, Presbyterianism, God, Spanish, Buddhism, the Republican Party), is almost always capitalized. A proper noun used as an addressed person's name is called *a noun of address*. *Common nouns* name everything else, things that usually are not capitalized.

Categories of Nouns

Nouns can be classified as: 1) *count nouns*, which name anything that can be counted (four books, two continents, a few dishes, a dozen buildings); 2) *mass nouns* (or non-count nouns), which name something that can't be counted (water, air, energy, blood); and 3) *collective nouns*, which can take a singular form but are composed of more than one individual person or items (jury, team, class, committee, herd). We should note that some words can be either a count noun or a non-count noun depending on how they're being used in a sentence:

E.g. He got into trouble. (non-count)

E.g. He had many troubles. (countable)

E.g. Experience (non-count) is the best teacher.

E.g. They had many exciting experiences (countable) in college.

Whether these words are count or non-count nouns will determine whether they can be used with articles and determiners or not.

Forms of Nouns

Nouns can be in the subjective, possessive, and objective case. The word case defines the role of the noun in the sentence. Is it a subject, an object, or does it show possession? Nouns in the subject and object role are identical in form; nouns that show the possessive, however, take a different form. Usually an apostrophe is added followed by the letter "s" (except for plurals, which take the plural "-s" ending first, and then add the apostrophe).

E.g. The English professor (subject) is tall.

E.g. He chose the English professor (object).

E.g. The English professor's (possessive) car is green.

Almost all nouns change form when they become plural, usually with the simple addition of an - s or - es.



Your Training Exercises



Exercise A: Indicate whether the noun preceding the space is a count noun (mark by C) or a non-count noun (mark by NC):

1. It took great courage _____¹ for Mr. Foreboder _____² to admit to embezzling funds _____³ from the bank _____⁴.
2. It is hard to discover the truth _____⁵ about this particular case _____⁶.
3. You may be a student _____⁷ or have just finished your graduation _____⁸, and want to look for fun jobs _____⁹ that pay well.
4. The globalization _____¹⁰ of crime _____¹¹ demands a comprehensive overview _____¹² of the crime and justice field _____¹³.
5. Crime and justice _____¹⁴ are no longer simply local or national issues _____¹⁵; they are global concerns _____¹⁶ which require careful study _____¹⁷ and concerted international action _____¹⁸.
6. The number of types _____¹⁹ of illicit drugs _____²⁰ has increased and their nature _____²¹ diversified in recent years _____²².
7. In all countries _____²³ police recorded crime figures _____²⁴ are acknowledged to give an incomplete picture _____²⁵ of crime _____²⁶ experienced by the population _____²⁷.
8. The legal systems _____²⁸ of over half the countries _____²⁹ of the world _____³⁰ are the product _____³¹ of the civil law tradition _____³².
9. In all countries, most people _____³³ who come in contact _____³⁴ with the criminal justice system _____³⁵ are males _____³⁶.
10. The ratio _____³⁷ between adult male suspects _____³⁸ and suspects of other age-gender group _____³⁹ varies among countries.
11. Elements _____⁴⁰ of criminal justice _____⁴¹ systems _____⁴² such as the police _____⁴³, courts _____⁴⁴, and prisons _____⁴⁵ are found in all countries _____⁴⁶, albeit their names _____⁴⁷ may be different.
12. The fine _____⁴⁸ is the most frequently used non-custodial sanction _____⁴⁹ regardless of level _____⁵⁰ of development _____⁵¹ of the country.
13. Public attitudes _____⁵² to punishment _____⁵³ generally conform to the actual sentencing _____⁵⁴ options _____⁵⁵ available.
14. In developing countries and countries in transition _____⁵⁶ the public _____⁵⁷ displays a marked preference _____⁵⁸ for prison _____⁵⁹ as a punishment.
15. Horrific incidents _____⁶⁰ around the world _____⁶¹ have heightened awareness _____⁶² of firearms _____ and their danger _____⁶³.



Exercise B: Recognize all nouns in the text and underline them.
Explain the category and the form the recognized nouns belong to:

14 Killed in Clashes With Police as Violence Spreads in Tunisia

Fourteen civilians were killed in clashes with the Tunisian police over the weekend, the government said Sunday, in the deadliest violence in a wave of unrest that has lasted nearly a month. Protesters say they are angry about a lack of jobs, but officials say the rioting is the work of a minority of violent extremists' intent on damaging Tunisia. The government said in a statement that eight people had been killed in clashes in the towns of Thala and Kasserine, both near the border with Algeria, since Saturday night. The official TAP news agency said later that four civilians had been killed in clashes in a third town, Rgeb, about 130 miles west of Tunis, the capital, and that two more people had been killed in Kasserine Province. The news agency said the people who were killed had been armed with gasoline bombs, sticks and stones and were attacking public property. Several officers were also wounded, some of them seriously, it said. (...) Officials said the police had fired only in self-defense when violent crowds attacked, ignoring warning shots. The government said in a statement that the police were doing nothing more than carrying out their legal and legitimate mission to maintain order and guarantee the safety and liberty of citizens In Thala, several residents said by telephone that they had seen several military vehicles enter the town late on Saturday, apparently sent to help quell the violence. Government officials did not respond to phone calls seeking comment on the casualties or the military involvement. The staff at the hospital in Rgeb declined to answer questions. President Ben Ali has said the violent protests are unacceptable and could discourage investors and tourists, who provide a large part of the country's revenues. The authorities say they had responded to the protesters' grievances by starting a program with employers to provide jobs for 50,000 unemployed graduates. Tunisia has recorded strong economic growth in the past decade, but it has not been fast enough to satisfy demand for jobs. Unemployment is particularly acute among the young in the interior of the country. Before this weekend, two people had been killed in the unrest. Another two killed themselves in acts of protest, including one man who set himself on fire last month, setting off the riots.





Ex. C: Read the instructions on the plural forms of nouns given below; change single nouns to plural [if possible] to fill in the chat:



The plural form of most nouns is created by adding the letters **-s** or **-es**: E.g.: more than one snake = snakes; more than one witch = witches

There are several nouns that have irregular plural forms. Plurals formed in this way are sometimes called mutated (or mutating) plurals:

E.g.: more than one child = children

There are nouns that maintain their Latin or Greek form in the plural:

E.g. more than one phenomenon = phenomena

A handful of nouns appear to be plural in form but take a singular verb:

E.g.: The news is bad.

Another handful of nouns might seem to be singular in nature but take a plural form and always use a plural verb:

E.g.: Her scissors were stolen.

№	Singular	Plural	№	Singular	Plural
1	baby		21	gymnastics	
2	gallery		22	news	
3	difference		23	criterion	
4	reality		24	appendix	
5	potato		25	index	
6	hero		26	phenomenon	
7	memo		27	thesis	
8	stereo		28	crisis	
9	knife		29	focus	
10	leaf		30	goose	
11	hoof		31	person	
12	life		32	woman	
13	self		33	mouse	
14	elf		34	barracks	
15	glasses		35	child	
16	scissors		36	witch	
17	pants		37	snake	
18	economics		38	box	
19	statistics		39	syllabus	
20	mathematics		40	alumnus	



Exercise D: Read the instructions on the plural forms of collective company names, family names, sports teams given below. Also choose the correct verb form to complete the sentences:



There are so called **collective nouns**, which are singular when we think of them as groups and plural when we think of the individuals acting within the whole: E.g.: audience, committee, dozen, group, jury, public, etc.

When a family name (a proper noun) is pluralized, we almost always simply add an "s" or "es": E.g.: the Joneses, the Bushes, the Rodriguezes, the Smiths, the Kennedys, the Grays, etc.

The names of companies and other organizations are usually regarded as singular, regardless of their ending: E.g.: General Motors, Ford, etc.

The names of sports teams, on the other hand, are treated as plurals, regardless of the form of that name: E.g.: The Yankees, the Utah Jazz, etc.

1. A dozen of eggs _____¹ (is; are) probably not enough.
2. A dozen of friends _____² (is; are) coming over this afternoon.
3. The jury _____³ (delivers; deliver) its verdict.
4. The jury then _____⁴ (come in and take; comes in and takes) their seats.
5. We could say the Tokyo String Quartet _____⁵ (is; are) one of the best string ensembles in the world, but we could say the Beatles _____⁶ (was; were) some of the most famous singers in history.
6. The number of applicants _____⁷ (is; are) steadily increasing.
7. There are several students in the lobby and number _____⁸ (is; are) here to see the president.
8. General Motors _____⁹ (has; have) announced its fall lineup of new vehicles.
9. Ford _____¹⁰ (has; have) announced its breakup with Firestone Tires. Their cars will no longer use tires built by Firestone.
10. Upton, Vernon, and Gridley _____¹¹ (is; are) moving to new law offices next week.
11. Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego & Associates _____¹² (has; have) won all their cases this year.
12. For two years in a row, the Utah Jazz _____¹³ (has; have) attempted to draft a big man.
13. The Smiths _____¹⁴ (is; are) coming to dinner tonight.



Ex. E: Read the instructions on the gender of nouns given below;
1) change the feminine nouns to the masculine in the sentences;
2) change the masculine nouns to the feminine in the sentences:



Nouns have four genders:

1. The masculine gender is used for all males. Example: boy, man
2. The feminine gender is used for all females. Example: girl, woman
3. The common gender is used where the noun can be both male and female. Example: cousin, friend, person, child, student
4. The neuter gender is used for things which have no life or sex. Example: table, chair.

I. Change the feminine nouns to the masculine in the sentences:

1. My unt visits her niece every week-end.
2. The lady has only one heiress from among her close relatives.
3. The daughter seems to be much more talkative than her mother.
4. Would any actress refuse an offer to play the role of a princess?
5. Their queen is all in sorrow since she has become a widow.
6. Miss Colby, our manageress, is said to be a spinster.
7. The hostess of the tiny Glosser Inn was suspected to be a real witch.
8. My daughter-in-law serves as a stewardess and has a lot of rewarding benefits, including discount travel benefits for the whole family.
9. The countess has a sister who works just as a waitress in the Colombo bar right behind the corner.
10. The authoress is writing a historical book about the empress.

II. Change the masculine nouns to the feminine in the sentences:

1. The bridegroom thanked the priest for the fascinating wedding ceremony.
2. John's brother works as a waiter despite his professional legal training.
3. The dog barked at the milkman.
4. A cock was killed by a fox.
5. The manservant has worked many years for the duke and his family.
6. Her husband was brought up by a step-father.
7. He was a postman before he became a webmaster.
8. The lad wants to be a monk.
9. The sultan always loved horses and now he owns several stallions.
10. Mary's father-in-law is a landlord and makes a lot of money on lease.



Exercise F: Form abstract nouns from the nouns in brackets to fill in the blanks in the sentences:



An abstract noun is a type of noun that refers to something a person cannot physically interact with.

Abstract nouns are nouns that:

- can't be touched, tasted, seen, heard or smelt or felt;
- usually represent feeling, ideas and qualities;
- can be singular nouns and plural nouns;
- can be countable or uncountable.

1. One of the great pleasures of ____¹ (child) is found in the mysteries which it hides from the skepticism of the elders, and works up into small mythologies of its own.
2. Any contravention of the provisions of this Code of Conduct may be used to terminate ____² (member).
3. According to Simone Weil, ____³ (friend) ought to be a gratuitous joy, like the joys recorded by art or life.
4. The disposition or quality of being sociable is often regarded as ____⁴ (friend).
5. Inspirational ____⁵ (leader) is the key in every setting where the business depends on people for its results.
6. Almost everyone in the ____⁶ (neighbor) had 'troubles', frankly localized and specified, but only the chosen had 'complications'.
7. It was many and many a year ago, in a ____⁷ (king) by the sea that a maiden lived whom you may know by the name of Annabel Lee (...) (by Edgar Allan Poe)
8. Luckily the option of flexible training meant I could easily combine ____⁸ (mother) with continuing my career.
9. He succeeded his father on the throne in early ____⁹ (man), probably about sixteen or eighteen years of age.
10. When Pandora opened the box all the misfortunes that have since afflicted ____¹⁰ (man) flew out.
11. Neighborhood groups formed a ____¹¹ (partner) to fight crime.
12. He was charmed by the ____¹² (sweet) of her manner as by the pleasantness of a cool breeze on a hot summer day.



Exercise G: Identify the possessive noun in each sentence. If the noun is singular, put S in the blank space and if it is plural, write P:



A **possessive noun** is a noun that names who or what has something:

- Add an apostrophe and –s ('s) to form the possessive of most singular nouns;
- Add an apostrophe (') to form the possessive of plural nouns that end with –s;
- Add an apostrophe and –s ('s) to form the possessive of plural nouns that do not end with –s.

1. The clerk put my parents' luggage on the conveyor belt. ___ (S or P)
2. The attendants' uniforms were blue and gold. ___ (S or P)
3. The child's mother looks exhausted and frustrated. ___ (S or P)
4. The captain's voice will come over the loudspeaker in case of emergency. ___ (S or P)
5. The attendant's instructions for an emergency landing were easy to understand. ___ (S or P)
6. The ground crews' jobs were difficult in the stormy weather. ___ (S or P)
7. The scientists' convention on Global Sustainable Bio Energy met yesterday. ___ (S or P)
8. The volunteers' program needs people. ___ (S or P)
9. They are still investigating the serious accident caused by the motorist's car having skidded on the ice. ___ (S or P)
10. The agent's company sold a piece of real estate, used for agricultural purposes, at an abnormally high price. ___ (S or P)
11. The citizen's group which praises the law is often regarded as a law-abiding and decent community. ___ (S or P)
12. The student's workbook had few grammatical errors. ___ (S or P)
13. Keith's old Volkswagen car was stolen last night and abandoned in a junk yard. ___ (S or P)
14. Do you remember which team won last year's World Series? ___ (S or P)
15. The gases' odors mixed and became nauseating. ___ (S or P)
16. The seaweed was destroyed by the fishes' overfeeding. ___ (S or P)
17. Some fairy tales are just scaring when they tell the young readers that the witches' brooms are hidden right by the corner of any house. ___ (S or P)



The Top 25 Grammatical Terms

1. Active Voice – the verb form in which the subject of the sentence performs or causes the action expressed by the verb. Contrast with Passive Voice.

2. Adjective – the part of speech (or word class) that modifies a noun or a pronoun.

3. Adverb – the part of speech that modifies a verb, adjective, or other adverb.

4. An article – is a limiting word, not descriptive, which cannot be used alone, but always joins to a substantive word to denote a particular thing, or a group or class of things, or any individual of a group or class.

5. Clause – is a group of words that contains a subject and a predicate. A clause may be either a sentence (independent clause) or a sentence-like construction included within another sentence (dependent clause).

6. Complex Sentence – a sentence that contains at least one independent clause and one dependent clause.

7. Compound Sentence – a sentence that contains at least two independent clauses, often joined by a conjunction.

8. Conjunction – is the part of speech that serves to connect words, phrases, clauses, or sentences.

9. Declarative Sentence – is a sentence that makes a statement.

10. Dependent Clause (a subordinate clause) – is a group of words that begins with a relative pronoun or a subordinating conjunction. A dependent clause has both a subject and a verb but (unlike an independent clause) cannot stand alone as a sentence.

11. Direct Object – is a noun or pronoun that receives the action of a transitive verb.

12. Exclamatory Sentence – is a sentence that expresses strong feelings by making an exclamation.

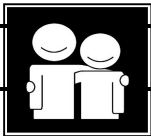
13. Imperative Sentence – is a sentence that gives advice or instructions or that expresses a request or a command.

14. Independent Clause – is a group of words made up of a subject and a predicate. An independent clause (unlike a dependent clause) can stand alone as a sentence.

15. Indirect Object – is a noun or pronoun that indicates to whom or for whom the action of a verb in a sentence is performed.

16. Interrogative Sentence – is a sentence that asks a question.

17. Noun – the part of speech that is used to name a person, place, thing, quality, or action and can function as the subject or object of a verb, the object of a preposition, or an appositive.
18. Passive Voice – is a verb form in which the grammatical subject receives the verb's action. Contrast with active voice.
19. Predicate – is one of the two main parts of a sentence or clause, modifying the subject and including the verb, objects, or phrases governed by the verb.
20. Prepositional Phrase – is a group of words made up of a preposition, its object, and any of the object's modifiers.
21. Pronoun – is a word that takes the place of a noun.
22. Sentence – is a word or (more commonly) a group of words that expresses a complete idea. Conventionally, a sentence includes a subject and a verb. It begins with a capital letter and concludes with a mark of end punctuation.
23. Subject – is the part of a sentence that indicates what it is about.
24. Tense – is the time of a verb's action or state of being, such as past, present, and future.
25. Verb – is the part of speech that describes an action or occurrence or indicates a state of being.



Have Fun! Lawyer Jokes!

- Driving her car one afternoon, Mrs. Brown rolled through a stop sign. She was pulled over by a police officer, who recognized her as his former English teacher. "Mrs. Brown," he said, "those stop signs are periods, not commas."
- "What's the matter, you look depressed." "I'm having trouble with my wife." "What happened?" "She said she wasn't going to speak to me for 30 days." "But that ought to make you happy." "It did, but today is the last day."
- A man received a letter from some kidnappers. The letter said, "If you don't promise to send us \$100,000 I swear that we will kidnap your wife." The poor man wrote back, "I am afraid I can't keep my promise but I hope you will keep yours."
- A man inserted an "ad" in the classifieds: "Wife wanted". Next day, he received hundreds of letters. They all said the same thing: "You can have mine."
- There was one guy who told his woman that he loved her so much that he would go through hell for her. They got married – and now he is going through hell.



Your Self - Assessment Test: Articles and Nouns

◆ **Exercise 1.** Indicate whether the noun before the space is a count noun (write C) or a non-count noun (write NC):

1. It took great courage ____¹ for the boy to admit to stealing money ____² from his brother.
2. It takes a lot of patience ____³ to deal with prisoners ____⁴ sentenced to life-terms ____⁵.
3. I generally don't like to give advice ____⁶ about matters of love ____⁷.
4. Many educational institutions in this city ____⁸ don't have modern equipment ____⁹.
5. I asked him to send me information ____¹⁰ about the Italian mafia ____¹¹.
6. I can't stand the traffic ____¹² in this city.
7. I have to buy a lot of furniture ____¹³ for my new office ____¹⁴.
8. There are so many different type of people ____¹⁵ in the world ____¹⁶.
9. He made a good lawyer and earns a large amount ____¹⁷ of money ____¹⁸.
10. There is less immigration ____¹⁹ to Canada now than there used to be.

◆ **Exercise 2.** What is the correct plural form of a word? Choose and use:

1. How many ____¹ (persons; people) study English as a second language?
2. Five ____² (womans; women) came together and opened a profitable legal services company.
3. The ____³ (thiefs; thieves) have been finally caught by the police.
4. The board has adopted several revised ____⁴ (memorandums; memoranda) on corporate governance and revised terms of reference for each of the board's standing committees.
5. Some personal ____⁵ (data; datas) is defined as sensitive and personal and is subject to special rules.
6. The article presents six developmentally appropriate practice principles that further guide the development of health and safety ____⁶ (curricula; curriculums).
7. Coeducational institutions usually use ____⁷ (alumni; alumnus) for graduates of both sexes.
8. Works which were in themselves poor have often proved unusual ____⁸ (stimuli; stimulus) to the imagination.
9. Access to a great amount of linguistic data is not the only advantage of using computerized textual ____⁹ (corpora; corpus).

◆ **Exercise 3.** Fill in all the gaps with the appropriate article THE, A, AN or ZERO article (mark by X):



___¹ United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland consists of ___² four countries forming ___³ three distinct jurisdictions each having its own court system and ___⁴ legal profession: England & Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland. ___⁵ UK was established in 1801 with ___⁶ union of ___⁷ Great Britain and Ireland, but only achieved its present form in 1922 with ___⁸ partition of ___⁹ Ireland and ___¹⁰ establishment of ___¹¹ independent Irish Free State, later ___¹² Republic of Ireland. ___¹³ UK joined ___¹⁴ European Economic Community, now ___¹⁵ European Union, in 1973, since when it has been ___¹⁶ requirement to incorporate ___¹⁷ European legislation into ___¹⁸ UK law, and to recognize ___¹⁹ jurisdiction of ___²⁰ European Court of Justice in ___²¹ matters of ___²² EU law. There have been ___²³ significant constitutional reforms since ___²⁴ Labor government came into ___²⁵ power in 1997, which make any description of ___²⁶ UK legal system before then out of ___²⁷ date. ___²⁸ Labor government immediately instituted ___²⁹ process of ___³⁰ devolution, i.e. devolving ___³¹ certain areas of ___³² government to ___³³ component countries of ___³⁴ UK: ___³⁵ separate Scottish Parliament and ___³⁶ Welsh Assembly were established following ___³⁷ referendums in ___³⁸ countries concerned. ___³⁹ Ireland already had its Assembly, although this was not in ___⁴⁰ operation. In ___⁴¹ context of these new legislatures ___⁴² English Parliament is often referred to as ___⁴³ 'Westminster'. ___⁴⁴ UK is ___⁴⁵ signatory of ___⁴⁶ European Convention of Human Rights, and this has recently been incorporated into ___⁴⁷ UK law with ___⁴⁸ passing of ___⁴⁹ Human Rights Act 1998. This allows for ___⁵⁰ provisions of ___⁵¹ Convention to be applied directly by ___⁵² UK courts. There is no written constitution. ___⁵³ Queen is ___⁵⁴ Head of State, although in ___⁵⁵ practice ___⁵⁶ supreme authority of ___⁵⁷ Crown is carried by ___⁵⁸ government of ___⁵⁹ day. ___⁶⁰ legislature is ___⁶¹ bicameral Parliament. ___⁶² House of ___⁶³ Commons consists of 659 Members of ___⁶⁴ Parliament (MPs), elected by ___⁶⁵ simple majority vote in ___⁶⁶ general election every five years, and although ___⁶⁷ Government has ___⁶⁸ right to call ___⁶⁹ election at any time before then, and in ___⁷⁰ practice usually brings ___⁷¹ date forward to secure ___⁷² electoral advantage. ___⁷³ House of Lords until recently consisted of ___⁷⁴ life peers, awarded peerages for ___⁷⁵ public service, and ___⁷⁶ large number of ___⁷⁷ hereditary peers whose membership of ___⁷⁸ House of Lords depended on their aristocratic birth.

◆ **Exercise 4.** Fill in the gaps with the possessive form of a noun, so that the sentences on the right mean the same as the ones on the left:

Sentence 1	No	Sentence 2
In Islamic law, the death penalty is appropriate for intentional murder, when the family of the victim is given the option as to whether or not to insist on such a punishment.	1	In Islamic law, the death penalty is appropriate for intentional murder, when the ____ ¹ family is given the option as to whether or not to insist on such a punishment.
In Geneva, in April 2005, there was a call for a moratorium on corporal punishment, which was, however, rejected by the Legal Research Commission of the Al-Azhar University in Cairo, the leading Islamic learning centre of the world.	2	In Geneva, in April 2005, there was a call for a moratorium on corporal punishment, which was, however, rejected by the Legal Research Commission of the Al-Azhar University in Cairo, the ____ ² leading Islamic learning centre.
Law of Bahrain is based on the Islamic law known as Sharia however it is less strictly enforced than in some other Gulf countries.	3	____ ³ law is based on the Islamic law known as Sharia however it is less strictly enforced than in some other Gulf countries.
The Saudi Arabian Government has declared the Holy Quran and the Sunna (tradition) of the Prophet Muhammad to be the constitution of the country.	4	The Saudi Arabian Government has declared the Holy Quran and the Sunna (tradition) of the Prophet Muhammad to be the ____ ⁴ constitution.
According to Human Rights Watch, Nigeria is the most populous country in Africa, but still practices stoning as a punishment for adultery.	5	According to Human Rights Watch, Nigeria is ____ ⁵ most populous country, but still practices stoning as a punishment for adultery.
Unlike later executions, hangings in the 16th and 17th century were a spectacle designed to enlighten the community of the evils of piracy.	6	Unlike later executions, hangings in the 16th and 17th century were a spectacle designed to enlighten the community of the ____ ⁶ evils.
Some societies regard the death penalty as violation of the right of people to live.	7	Some societies regard the death penalty as violation of the ____ ⁷ right to live.
The views of my opponent are not worth mentioning.	8	My ____ ⁸ views are not worth mentioning.
I knew that it must be a walk of at least two hours.	9	I knew that it must be at least a ____ ⁹ walk.

3. Jack Crambo had ___⁶ good job in one of ___⁷ biggest law firms in ___⁸ city.

⁶ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

⁷ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

⁸ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

4. Jack was ___⁹ honest, hard-working lawyer, but he hated his job.

⁹ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

5. Jack was originally from ___¹⁰ Italy but his family moved to ___¹¹ USA when he was 15 years old.

¹⁰ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

¹¹ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

6. Now Jack lives in ___¹² Denver which is located at the foot of ___¹³ Rocky Mountains, but dreams to move to ___¹⁴ Los Angeles where ___¹⁵ rest of his big Crambo family resides.

¹² a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

¹⁴ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

¹³ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

¹⁵ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

7. At ___¹⁶ beginning of ___¹⁷ twentieth century, East Los Angeles became ___¹⁸ popular immigrant destination.

¹⁶ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

¹⁸ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

¹⁷ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

8. In ___¹⁹ early 1900s, ___²⁰ Russians, Jews, Japanese, and Mexicans all had ___²¹ significant presence in ___²² area.

¹⁹ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

²¹ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

²⁰ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

²² a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

9. Living east of ___²³ river and working in ___²⁴ nearby factories, or traveling by ___²⁵ electric rail into ___²⁶ downtown Los Angeles, ___²⁷ immigrants and their children helped fuel ___²⁸ prosperity of ___²⁹ growing metropolis.

²³ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

²⁷ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

²⁴ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

²⁵ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

²⁸ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

²⁶ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

²⁹ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

10. By ___³⁰ onset of ___³¹ World War II, ___³² East Los Angeles had almost become ___³³ exclusively Latino community, soon reinforced by ___³⁴ influx of ___³⁵ Mexican workers who arrived to man ___³⁶ machines in ___³⁷ area's burgeoning war industries.

³⁰ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

³⁴ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

³¹ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

³⁵ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

³² a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

³⁶ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

³³ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

³⁷ a ___ an ___ the ___ zero ___

◆ **Exercise 3.** Decide whether the statement is false (F) or true (T). Put the tick to confirm your choice. Give a correct answer in case of a false statement:

№	Statement	F	T
1	Nouns are a class of words used to show the performance of an action, existence, possession, or state of a subject.		
2	Nouns can be modified by an adjective and can take an article or determiner.		
3	Nouns never denote abstract and intangible concepts.		
4	Articles A and AN are used before nouns that introduce something or someone you have not mentioned before.		
5	You use article AN when the noun you are referring to begins with a consonant.		
6	You should never use THE when you have already mentioned the thing you are talking about.		
7	You use article THE when you know that the listener knows or can work out what particular person/thing you are talking about.		
8	Proper nouns are the names of specific things, people, or places, such as John, France. They usually begin with a capital letter.		
9	Concrete nouns refer to things which you can smell such as odors and flavors.		
10	Common nouns are general names such as person, mansion, and book. They can be either concrete or abstract.		
11	Abstract nouns refer to ideas or qualities such as liberty and truth.		
12	Countable nouns refer to things which can't be counted (can't be singular or plural as a result).		
13	Uncountable nouns refer to some groups of countable nouns, substances, feelings and types of activity (can only be plural).		
14	An uncountable noun is always used with the indefinite article.		
15	A noun will always belong to only one type: it will be proper or common, abstract or concrete, countable or non-countable or collective.		
16	In Modern English almost all nouns are declined in pretty much the same way: we add -s to make plurals and -'s to make possessives.		
17	A collective noun is similar to a countable noun, and is roughly the opposite of a non-countable noun.		

Wise thought coming to mind: • **Grammar is the logic of speech, even as logic is the grammar of reason.** (*Richard C. Trench*)



It is interesting to know

1. *Nouns including pronouns and noun phrases perform ten main grammatical functions within sentences in the English language.* You must learn the ten functions to fully and correctly use nouns and noun phrases in spoken and written English. The ten functions of nouns and noun phrases are:

1) Subject; 2) Predicate nominative; 3) Direct object; 4) Object complement; 5) Indirect object; 6) Prepositional complement; 7) Noun phrase modifier; 8) Possessive modifier; 9) Appositive; 10) Adverbial.

2. *Many English words have both literal and metaphorical or figurative meanings.* The literal meaning of a word is its most widely used sense. The metaphorical meaning is figurative – it expresses an idea by referring to something else in a non-literal way. Metaphors help us to express our understanding of the world around us. They add color, vivid imagery and perhaps emotion to a sentence.

3. *In everyday English, words are very commonly used metaphorically.* We use metaphors so regularly that we often don't even register that we are using them. For example, we have lots of metaphors about weather. A lot of metaphors relate to nature in general. A lot of metaphors are based on gardens or agriculture. Many metaphors relate to water. Have a look at these metaphors and think about how they relate to the literal meaning:

Metaphors	The meaning
1) The ocean of his mind was awash with new ideas.	
2) He watered down his proposal quite a lot and in the end it wasn't radical enough.	
3) She made a fatal mistake when she signed the agreement.	
4) His refusal set off a chain of events that ended in his arrest.	
5) The agreement was hedged around by a large number of restrictions.	
6) I think this will throw some light on the issue.	
7) This is a thorny issue so it will take some time to sort it out.	
8) Waves of disappointment swept over him.	
9) There was a huge amount of fallout over the Prime Minister's decision.	
10) Low interest rates fuelled the house-prices boom.	



Grammar Rules: Auxiliary verbs

What are auxiliary verbs?

1. Auxiliary verbs (sometimes known as helping verbs) are verbs that are used to assist the verb.
2. Auxiliary verbs can not be used without a main verb.
3. Auxiliary verbs can not be used with modal verbs.
4. Auxiliary verbs are used to make sentences negative and to form the passive voice, the continuous tense and the perfect tense.
5. Auxiliary verbs are used to ask questions.
6. Auxiliary verbs are used in the sentence structure of the verb sentence.
7. The 3 most common auxiliary verbs are: DO, BE and HAVE.
8. DO, BE and HAVE are the English auxiliary verbs used in a negative structure, a question or to show tense.
9. DO, BE and HAVE are irregular verbs and can be used as main verbs.
10. Modal verbs are also auxiliary verbs, these are *can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, will, and would*, they differ from the others since they can never function as a main verb.

Do - Does - Did

Do is used with the present simple tense.

Do-Does are used as part of the sentence structure for negative statements/sentences with the present simple tense

Do-Does are used as part of the sentence structure for questions, with the present simple tense.

Did is used with the past simple tense.

Did is used as part of the sentence structure for negative statements/sentences with the past simple tense

Did is used as part of the sentence structure for questions, with the past simple tense.

Do - Does and **Don't - Doesn't** are used for questions and negatives in the Present Simple Tense.

Did and **Didn't** are used in the Past Simple Tense.

Be - Am - Is - Are - Was - Were

Be is used with the Present Participle in Continuous (Progressive) Verbs. It is also used with the Past Participle in the Passive.

Have - Has - Had

Have is used with the Past Participle to form the Perfect Aspect.

Importance of the Auxiliary Verb



In English, tenses are formed by conjugating an auxiliary verb plus a standard form of the principal verb (the base form, the gerund form, or the past participle form). It is important to focus on the variations in the auxiliary verb to properly use English tenses.

Symbols Used:

S (subject); Aux (auxiliary verb); O (objects); ? (question word, i.e., who, what when, etc.)

Construction:

In general, the following patterns to construct sentences in active sentences are used:

Positive: S + Verb + O

Negative: S + Aux + Verb + O

Question: (?) + Aux + S + Verb + (O)

Helping and Modal Auxiliary Verbs



Verbs such as *will, shall, may, might, can, could, must, ought to, should, would, used to, need* are used in conjunction with main verbs to express shades of time and mood. The combination of helping verbs with main verbs creates what are called *verb phrases or verb strings*. *Shall, will and forms of have, do and be* combine with main verbs to indicate time and voice. As auxiliaries, the verbs *be, have and do* can change form to indicate changes in subject and time.

Other helping verbs, called *modal auxiliaries or modals*, such as *can, could, may, might, must, ought to, shall, should, will, and would*, do not change form for different subjects. In a separate section on the Modal Auxiliaries, we will have a thorough look at these verbs in terms of their various meanings of *necessity, advice, ability, expectation, permission, possibility, etc.*

The auxiliary verb construction *used to*



The auxiliary verb construction *used to* is used to express an action that took place in the past, perhaps customarily, but now that action no longer customarily takes place. *Used to* is best reserved for colloquial usage; it has no place in formal or academic text.

Compare: E.g.: We used to take long vacation trips with the whole family.

E.g.: There was a custom in our family to take long vacation trips.



Your Training Exercises



Exercise A: Identify the bold verb as an auxiliary verb (A) or a full (main) verb (F). Prove your choice:

1. Serving on a jury **is** a fundamental duty in our society.
2. Through service on a jury citizens **have** a direct hand in the administration of justice.
3. Australia uses an adversarial system, and potential jurors **are** randomly selected from an electoral roll.
4. Once a potential juror **has** entered the courthouse, they must fill out a jury questionnaire, which asks about their background.
5. A person seeking to **be** excused from jury service in Arizona must apply to the court that issued the summons.
6. The Ministry of Justice **has** responsibility for different parts of the justice system – the courts, prisons, probation services, etc.
7. Her Majesty's Courts Service (HMCS) **is** an executive agency of the Ministry of Justice of the UK.
8. Human Rights and Social Justice in the UK **has** conducted three research projects for the Equality and Human Rights Commission.
9. The website of Justice for Women, a feminist campaigning organization, supports and advocates on behalf of women who have fought back against or killed violent male partners, **doesn't** it?
10. What **does** the introduction of a Supreme Court of the United Kingdom provide in terms of the greater clarity in certain constitutional arrangements?
11. With DNA evidence and other science-based techniques fulfilling an increasingly important role in the detection and conviction of offenders, continuing research **is** needed to improve these methods and avoid erroneous conclusions.
12. The UK **has** made a unique contribution to the development of forensic science – and long may this continue.
13. In the UK, following the Crime and Disorder Act of 1998, the Youth Justice Board (YJB) really **does** fund over 450 separate crime prevention schemes.
14. The public opinion agency **does** a quick rundown of what Americans have learned about the justice system in the UK from Law & Order: UK.



Exercise B: Complete the sentences with "do" – "don't", "does" – "doesn't", or "did" – "didn't" to complete the sentences given below:

1. The United States Constitution ___¹ explicitly establish the office of Chief Justice, but presupposes its existence with a single reference in Article I, Section 3, and Clause 6.

2. Many Americans assume that white-collar criminals get off lightly, but many ___².

3. How many companies ___³ the US authorities file charges in separate alleged investment scams recently, marking the latest wave of securities fraud cases to emerge following Bernard Madoff's purported \$50bn "Ponzi" scheme?

4. A growing number of Portuguese ___⁴ believe the Euro zone's sovereign debt crisis will sooner or later force the prime minister, to ask the EU and the IMF (Int. Monetary Fund) for a financial rescue package.

5. What ___⁵ the World Economic Outlook (WEO) databases contain?

6. Sorry! We ___⁶ have any further information at the moment.

7. Not only ___⁷ these security methods help prevent employee crime, but they protect the company from punishment or lawsuits for negligent hiring.

8. Sir Henry Maine (1861) studied the ancient codes available in his day, and ___⁸ find any criminal law in the "modern" sense of the word.

9. How often ___⁹ you think that a person has been executed under the death penalty that was, in fact, innocent of the crime he was charged with?

10. How much ___¹⁰ criminal acts and their representation in cinema, literature and music really have in common?

11. Criminals love finding out that you're isolated, lonely and willing to talk, ___¹¹ they?

12. ___¹² John know exactly someone who has been a victim of a violent crime?

13. Get help and advice about crime and what to ___¹³ if you are worried about crime or are not sure if someone is breaking the law.

14. Criminal organizations sometimes arise in closely knit immigrant groups that ___¹⁴ trust the local police and other authorities.

15. What ___¹⁵ the term oppression mean in legal terms?

16. Restitution ___¹⁶ deals with the compensation for one's own loss, though it deals with the recovery of someone else's gain.





Exercise C: Complete the sentences with "have", "has", or "had" to complete the sentences given below:

1. Half of the US states ___¹ laws that lock up habitual offenders for life.

2. South Sudan's polling centers ___² to close their doors on Saturday after a week-long vote on independence from the north that could end a vicious cycle of civil war with the creation of the world's newest state.



3. The Westridge Capital Management and Locke Capital Management, which ___³ been accused separately of fraud by the US Securities and Exchange Commission, each claimed compliance with the Global Investment Performance Standards (Gips), a set of best practices maintained by the CFA (the Chartered Financial Analyst) Institute.

4. Prices for corn, soya beans and wheat ___⁴ in January returned to highs that only two years ago sparked food riots in more than 30 countries from Haiti to Bangladesh.

5. Moldova's parliament ___⁵ approved a new western-leaning government that aims to set the desperately poor former Soviet republic on a path to closer European integration.

6. UK manufacturing ___⁶ been boosted by an industry survey and data showing the business activity hit hardest by recession is well on its way to recovery.

7. Palestinian plans to build a city in the West Bank ___⁷ sparked a row in Israel, pitting rightwing politicians and Jewish settlers against Israeli companies involved in the project.

8. The emerging and developing economies' Western Hemisphere region ___⁸ been renamed Latin America and the Caribbean (LAC).

9. Mr. Jones ___⁹ a bad temper and gets angry at the smallest things.

10. Everyone ___¹⁰ bad days where nothing seems to go right.

11. The chief executive of the Australian Crime Commission ___¹¹ warned current law enforcement isn't properly equipped to respond to attacks on.

12. EU and NATO authorities started to rethink their common approach to cyber attacks, which ___¹² increased and grown more costly in recent years.

13. The imposition of Islamic law in several Nigerian states ___¹³ embedded divisions and caused thousands of Christians to flee.

14. Most people guilty of embezzlement do not ___¹⁴ criminal histories.

15. The idea of crime as deviant behavior ___¹⁵ a long history.



Exercise D: Complete the sentences with "are" or "is", "was" or "were" to complete the sentences given below:

1. The United States federal court system ___¹ the judicial branch of the federal government of the United States.

2. The Chief Justice, like all other federal judges, ___² nominated by the President of the United States and confirmed to sit on the Court by the Senate.

3. Some Chief Justices, like William Rehnquist, ___³ elevated by the President while serving on the bench as an Associate Justice.

4. Unlike Senators and Representatives who ___⁴ constitutionally prohibited from holding any other "office of trust or profit" of the United States or of any state while holding their congressional seats, the Chief Justice and the other members of the federal judiciary ___⁵ not barred from serving in other positions.

5. The first Chief Justice of the US ___⁶ John Jay while the seventeenth and current Chief Justice ___⁷ John G. Roberts, Jr.

6. The exercise of justice ___⁸ harsher in America than in any other rich country, with about 2 millions of Americans ___⁹ behind bars, roughly one in every 100 adults.

7. When analysts at the Congressional Research Service tried to count the number of separate offences on the books, they ___¹⁰ forced to give up.

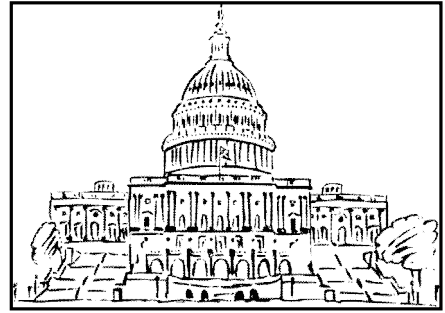
8. The Rewards for Justice program ___¹¹ one of the U.S. government's most valuable assets in the fight against international terrorism.

9. Tunisian politicians ___¹² holding talks on Sunday to try to form a unity government to help maintain a fragile calm two days after President Zine al-Abidine Ben Ali ___¹³ ousted by violent protests.

10. U.S.- China relations ___¹⁴ at a critical juncture and a summit between their leaders next week must produce "real action, on real issues" such as trade, climate change and North Korean nuclear proliferation, Secretary of State Hillary Clinton said on Friday.

11. Paul Greenwood and Stephen Walsh, ___¹⁵ arrested and accused by federal prosecutors of perpetrating a \$550m fraud dating back to 1996 and involving commodities trading.

12. CFA (Chartered Financial Analyst) Institute ___¹⁶ a global association of investment professionals from over 100 countries worldwide.





Exercise E: Fill in each blank space with the correct auxiliary verb to complete the given sentences. Comment your choice:

1. ____¹ any of those criminals involved ever express remorse?

a) Did; b) Was; c) Had

2. Why ____² hate crimes occur?

a) Did; b) Was; c) Had

3. ____³ you spoken to him before he was arrested?

a) Did; b) Were; c) Had

4. If you ____⁴ told me, I would have never found out the solution.

a) didn't; b) weren't; c) hadn't

5. ____⁵ they seeing each other though having been divorced?

a) Did; b) Had; c) Were

6. ____⁶ they continue seeing each other after the fatal bankruptcy?

a) Did; b) Had; c) Were

7. ____⁷ you learn anything from your past conviction?

a) Hadn't; b) Didn't; c) Weren't

8. ____⁸ he incarcerated and kept among the inmates of Central Jail Faisalabad, Pakistan in 2010?

a) Didn't; b) Wasn't; c) Hadn't

9. I realized that I ____⁹ understood the nature and causes of crime when it came to practice.

a) didn't; b) wasn't; c) hadn't

10. ____¹⁰ your brother serving as a chaplain for The Tombs, the Manhattan Detention Facility? His face seems to be so familiar to me!

a) Hadn't; b) Wasn't; c) Didn't

11. The modern prisons system ____¹¹ born in London, as a result of the views of Jeremy Bentham.

a) Did; b) Was; c) Had

12. By 1846, Michigan ____¹² abolished the death penalty for every crime but treason.

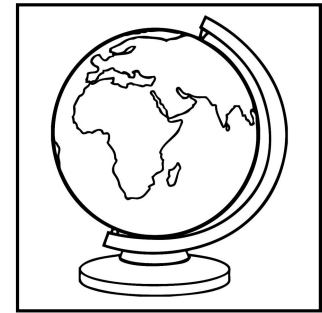
a) Did; b) Was; c) Had

13. In 1974 some British counties ____¹³ reorganized and in the 1990s many English cities became unitary authorities.

a) Did; b) Were; c) Had

14. Altogether 95 countries ____¹⁴ abolished capital punishment so far.

a) Did; b) Were; c) Had





Exercise F: Use the Modal Auxiliary Verbs: From the choices provided after each sentence select the verb that would correctly complete the sentences given below:

1. You seem to be having trouble with your Witness Testimony? ___¹ I help you to summarize all facts and questions?

a) Would; b) Will; c) Shall

2. I don't have enough money to buy lunch. ___² you lend me a couple of dollars?

a) May; b) Could; c) Shall

3. Driving while either intoxicated or drunk is highly dangerous and people impaired in such a way ___³ even attempt to drive under the threat of severe penalty.

a) mustn't; b) might not; c) would mind not to

4. If I had known all the dramatic consequences, I ___⁴ have acted differently.

a) should have; b) must have; c) will have

5. If you believe that story, you ___⁵ have your head examined.

a) should; b) ought; c) could

6. He ___⁶ have committed this crime. He wasn't even in the city that night.

a) might; b) shouldn't; c) couldn't

7. I'm really quite confused. ___⁷ you suggest me the way out of such an ambiguous situation?

a) should; b) might; c) could

8. Accident is not always a precise legal term and it ___⁸ generally be used in reference to various types of mishaps.

a) may; b) can; c) must

9. Your lawyer ___⁹ have helped you to avoid most of the charges if only he knew the truth.

a) might; b) has; c) ought

10. Those that eye-witnessed Hurricane Katrina in New Orleans in 2005 ___¹⁰ terrified by the long-lasting and extremely destructive effects it had.

a) might have been; b) must have been; c) shall have been

11. Some US states still do require, that couples ___¹¹ have a standard premarital blood test check for evidence of syphilis, rubella and HIV.

a) might; b) could; c) have to



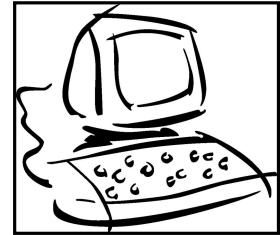


Exercise G: Complete the sentences with the correct auxiliary verb in the positive (P) or negative form (N). Explain your choice:

1. Computers ___¹ already revolutionized the way we live and work.

Auxiliary verb _____

Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____



2. You ___² park here, look, the notice says "No parking."

Auxiliary verb _____

Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____

3. How long ___³ you been working for this company?

Auxiliary verb _____

Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____

4. The issues ___⁴ be global and urgent, but the bureaucracy ___⁵ sometimes be mind-bogglingly slow and petty.

Auxiliary verb _____

Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____

5. The police located the art work which ___⁶ been stolen from the gallery.

Auxiliary verb _____

Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____

6. How many times ___⁷ your travel documents checked before you boarded the airplane?

Auxiliary verb _____

Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____

7. The board of directors ___⁸ be responsible for payment to stockholders.

Auxiliary verb _____

Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____

8. American automobile makers ___⁹ make better cars if they think there's a profit in it.

Auxiliary verb _____

Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____

9. The experiment ___¹⁰ revealed new trends as for the causes of criminal inclinations of individuals.

Auxiliary verb _____

Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____

10. Forces which bring positive results ___¹¹ sometimes called efforts.

Auxiliary verb _____

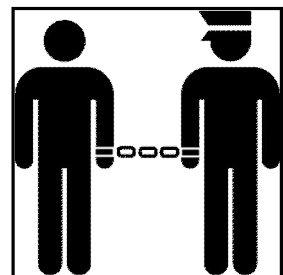
Positive (P) or negative form (N) of usage _____



Exercise H: Use the verbs in brackets with a suitable auxiliary modal verb. Comment your choice. Examine your help chat given below for better results:

Auxiliary Verb	Meanings
can	shows ability or knowledge; suggests possibility; gives an option
could	shows past ability; shows possibility
could have	suggests past opportunity that was missed
may	asks or gives permission; shows possibility
might	shows possibility
must	shows requirement; shows probability
must not	shows prohibition
should	shows advisability or expectation; shows obligation; shows expectation
should have	shows obligation that was not met; shows expectation that was not met; shows advisability after the fact
ought to	shows obligation that was not met; shows expectation that was not met; shows advisability after the fact
will	shows future time; shows a promise or willingness
would	indicates a repeated past action; indicates a future act in a past tense sentence

1. The arsonist warned his victims that he ___¹ (set) fire to the building.
2. The plaintiff ___² (learned) to drive a semi-truck, but he cannot now because of his back injury.
3. The court ___³ (ask) the defendant how she pleads.
4. You ___⁴ (receive) the signed agreement in tomorrow's mail.



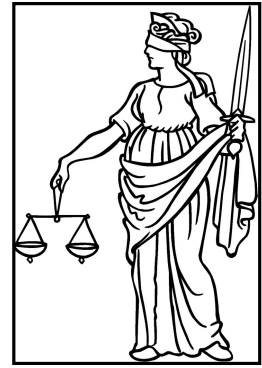
5. The court ____⁵ (grant) a motion to dismiss.
6. The court ____⁶ (grant) a motion to continue when the State amends a charge the day before trial.
7. Despite his back injury, the plaintiff ____⁷ still (drive) a semi-truck.
8. The prosecution ____⁸ (suggest) that the defendant's post-arrest silence implies guilt.
9. The court ____⁹ (grant) a motion to dismiss.
10. The court ____¹⁰ (instruct) the jury to disregard that remark.
11. The defendant ____¹¹ (argue) that Smith applies.
12. Acme ____¹² (clean up) the toxic waste site.
13. Until he got his back injury, the plaintiff ____¹³ (drive) a semi-truck.
14. The court ____¹⁴ (have instructed) the jury to disregard that remark, but it failed to do so.
15. The officer ____¹⁵ (handcuffed) the suspect, but he did not.
16. The officer ____¹⁶ (have handcuffed) the suspect, but he did not.
17. The prosecutor ____¹⁷ (charge) the defendant with first- or second-degree murder.
18. The court ____¹⁸ (grant) a motion to continue when the State amends a charge the day before trial.
19. The arsonist ____¹⁹ often (warn) his victims.
20. The defendant ____²⁰ (argue) that Smith applies.
21. The jurors for the case ____²¹ (leave) the deliberation room during the lunch hour.
22. The defendant ____²² (be considering) a plea bargain.
23. You ____²³ (receive) the signed agreement in tomorrow's mail.
24. The court ____²⁴ (instructed) the jury to disregard that remark, but it failed to do so.
25. The court ____²⁵ (instruct) the jury to disregard that remark.
26. The verdict ____²⁶ (be announced) after the parties return to the courtroom.
27. You ____²⁷ already (received) the signed agreement in the mail; I do not know why it is late.
28. You ____²⁸ (have received) the signed agreement in yesterday's mail; I don't know why it is late.
29. Any information relating to this project ____²⁹ (remain) confidential and will not be released to third parties without prior agreement.
30. This evidence is indicative that the company ____³⁰ (been) desirous of creating a monopoly with the operating market.



It is interesting to know

1. Lots of legal writing contains nouns that could have been verbs. These nouns wanted to be verbs, but the default patterns of legal writing made these verbs into nouns. Such nouns go by many names: nominalizations, hidden verbs, buried verbs, smothered verbs, etc.

2. Here are some of the most common nominalizations in legal writing. Think of the verb form you could use instead:



Legal nominalizations	Verbs
be dependent upon	
be in violation of	
bring suit against	
come to a resolution	
conduct an analysis	
conduct an examination	
enter into a settlement	
give notice	
make a payment	
make a recommendation	
make an argument	
make an assumption	
make an inquiry	
make an objection	
perform a review	
place emphasis on	
provide an explanation	
take into consideration	

3. There are three benefits at least of using verbs in place of nouns:

- 1) – You save words: because using the noun form requires you to add other words to help the noun. When you use the verb form, you can cut the helpers, which usually add little.
- 2) – You invigorate the text.
- 3) – You focus on actions instead of on things or on status; this moves the writing along.



Grammar Rules: Word Order

English word order

English word order is strict and rather inflexible. As there are few endings in English that show person, number, case, and tense, English relies on word order to show relationships between words in a sentence.

I. Word Order in Positive Sentences

A normal sentence in English usually contains at least three elements – SVO: subject, verb, and object. It may be complicated by adding place and time:

Subject	Verb(s)	Indirect object	Direct object	Place	Time
Laws	symbolize		obedience		
Lawyers	provide	clients	advices	outside courtrooms	regularly

II. Word Order in Negative Sentences

The word order in negative sentences is the same as in affirmative (positive) sentences. However, in negative sentences we usually need an auxiliary verb:

Subject	Verb(s)	Indirect object	Direct object	Place	Time
Lawyers	do not provide	clients	advices	homewards	anymore

III. Word Order in Subordinate Clauses

Conjunctions are often used between two clauses. In subordinate clauses, the word order is the same as in simple affirmative sentences:

Conjunction	Subject	Verb	Indirect object	Direct object	Place	Time
	Courts	issue	police	a warrant	over here	usually
if	they	suspect		someone		

IV. Position of Adverbs

There are 3 normal positions: 1) initial position (before the subject); 2) mid position (between the subject and the verb or immediately after *be* as a main verb) or 3) end position (at the end of the clause).

Adverb of Manner – How? (e.g.: slowly, carefully, awfully, etc.):

These adverbs are put behind the direct object (or behind the verb if there's

no direct object):

Subject	Verb(s)	Direct object	Adverb
The judge	managed	the case	skillfully.

Adverbs of Place – Where? (e.g.: here, there, behind, above, etc.):

These adverbs are put behind the direct object or the verb:

Subject	Verb(s)	Direct object	Adverb
The police	searched	the trace evidences	everywhere

Adverbs of Time – When? (e.g.: recently, now, then, yesterday, etc.):

Adverbs of time are usually put at the end of the sentence:

Subject	Verb(s)	Indirect object	Direct object	Time
The rules	prescribe	Internet users	the netiquette	while using the net

If you don't want to put emphasis on the time, you can also put the adverb of time at the beginning of the sentence:

Time	Subject	Verb(s)	Indirect object	Direct object
Next week	authorities	promise to reveal	to the public	the draft law

Adverbs of Frequency – How Often? or How Many?

(e.g.: always, never, seldom, usually, etc.):

Adverbs of frequency are put directly before the main verb. If *be* is the main verb and there is no auxiliary verb, adverbs of frequency are put behind *be*.

Is there an auxiliary verb such adverbs are put before *be*:

Subject	Auxiliary/be	Adverb	Main verb	Object/ place/ time
The contract		usually	represents	two parties
The agreement	may	normally	be terminated	by notice

Adverbs of Purpose or Reason for an action – Why?

This question is usually answered by a phrase or clause, rather than by a single-word adverb. They usually occupy the end position of a clause, and follow any other adverbs or adverb phrases or clauses. They are sometimes placed at the beginning of a clause, for emphasis.

Subject	Verb(s)	Direct object	Adverb	Adverb Clause of Purpose
She	drives	her car	carefully	to avoid traffic violations

There is a basic order in which adverbs will appear when there is more than one. Such order is called a **Royal Order of Adverbs**:

Subject	Verb	Manner	Place	Frequency	Time	Purpose
My boss	swims	happily	in the pool	every day	before supper	to keep in shape.

V. Word Order in Questions

A *question* may be either a linguistic expression used to make a request for information, or else the request itself made by such an expression. This information is provided with an answer. Questions are normally put forward or asked using interrogative sentences. However they can also be formed by imperative sentences, which normally express commands. You should always end such sentences with a question mark (?).

Types of Questions:

1. General or Yes/No or Closed Questions are questions that can be answered with yes or no. They normally begin with an auxiliary verb or a modal verb. They can also begin with main verbs like be and have:

Auxiliary or Modal	Subject	Verb(s)	Indirect object	Direct object	Place	Time
Do	laws	symbolize		obedience?		
Should	Lawyers	provide	clients	advices	at home	regularly?

2. Open or Special or WH Questions leave room for a description or opinion, and are more useful in eliciting information. There are nine wh – questions – *what* (asking about something); *when* (asking about something); *where* (asking about place or position), *which* (asking about one of a limited number of things.), *who* (asking about someone's identity), *whom* (asking about someone's identity), *whose* (asking about possession), *why* (asking for a reason) and *how* (asking about the way in which something is done).

Question word	Auxiliary or Modal	Subject	Verb(s)	Indirect object	Direct object	Place	Time
What	did	you	read	...	...	...	lately
When	did	you		...	...	...	...
Where	have	you	been	...	...	...	...
Which - ¹	did- ³	you- ⁴	Wear- ⁵	...	coat - ²	...	...
Who	are	you	looking at	...	...	...	...
Whom	did	she	ask	...	...	...	...
Whose		book	is	...	...	...	...
Why	are	you late		...	...	...	...
How long	have	you	been	...	...	...	...

Subject and Object Questions: Most questions are *object questions*. In other words, they ask about an object. However, there are also *subject questions*. Questions we ask to find out about the subject. These questions are asked using 'who', 'what' and 'which'.

3. Disjunctive or tag questions are short questions added to the end of a positive or negative statement. Normally a positive statement is followed by a *negative tag*, and a negative statement is followed by a *positive tag*. The statement and the tag are always separated by a comma. If the verb used in the statement is an auxiliary verb, then the verb used in the tag must match it. If a modal (*can, could, will, should, etc.*) is used in the statement, then the same modal is used in the tag part. If the statement doesn't use an auxiliary verb, then the auxiliary *do* is used in the tag part.

Subject	Verb(s) – Auxiliary/ Modal/ Main	Indirect object	Direct object	Place	Time	Question tag
He	is		a lawyer			isn't he?
He	must have had	his	legal practice	abroad	for years	mustn't he?
He	gave	his client	good advice		yesterday	didn't he?

4. Alternative questions or Questions with a choice are questions that present two or more possible answers and presuppose that only one is true. The word order in alternative questions is the same as in General questions. However, in alternative questions we usually need an alternative word to make the choice. The answer is usually given in full because you need to make a choice, but short responses are also possible.

Auxiliary or Modal	Subject + Alternative	Verb(s)+ Alternative	Indirect Object + Alternative	Direct Object+ Alternative	Place + Alt.	Time + Alt.

Alternative questions are sometimes asked in the form of special questions:

Question Word	Auxiliary or Modal + Alternative	Subject + Alt	Verb(s) + Alt	Indirect Object + Alt.	Direct Object + Alt.	Place + Alt.	Time + Alt.

VI. Word Order in Passive and Active Voice

There are two special forms for verbs called voice: Active voice and Passive voice.

The active voice is the "normal" voice. This is the voice that we use most of the time. In the active voice, the object receives the action of the verb:

Subject	Verb	Object
		>
The jury	pronounced	its verdict.

The passive voice is less usual. In the passive voice, the subject receives the action of the verb. The object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive verb. The structure of the passive voice is very simple:

subject + auxiliary verb (be) + main verb (past participle) + object

The main verb is always in its past participle form:

Subject	Verb	Object
		<
Verdicts	are pronounced	by the jury.

We can form the passive in any tense. In fact, conjugation of verbs in the passive tense is rather easy, as the main verb is always in past participle form and the auxiliary verb is always *be*. To form the required tense, we conjugate the auxiliary verb.

Here are some examples with most of the possible tenses:

infinitive		to be observed
simple	present	Law is observed.
	past	Law was observed.
	future	Law will be observed.
	conditional	Law would be observed.
continuous	present	Law is being observed.
	past	Law was being observed.
	future	Law will be being observed.
	conditional	Law would be being observed.
perfect simple	present	Law has been observed.
	past	Law had been observed.
	future	Law will have been observed.
	conditional	Law would have been observed.
perfect continuous	present	Law has been being observed.
	past	Law had been being observed.
	future	Law will have been being observed.
	conditional	Law would have been being observed.



Your Training Exercises



Exercise A: Put the words into the correct order. The sentences would start with the word marked by capital letter:

1. conscience/ the conscience/ does not / The legal/ differ/ much from/ of a professional/ judge/ of a juror.

2. hostages/ are/ to their/ own/ Judges/ prejudices.

3. were/ slowly/ and cautiously/ introduced/ in modern/ Russia/ in 1993/ by jury/ starting/ Trials.

4. high-profile/ have/ of recent/ debates/ The verdicts/ jury/ provoked/ in Russia/ trials/ heated.

5. willing/ a verdict/ generally/ to deliver/ tend/ with defendants/ to sympathize/ Jurors/ are not at all/ and/ to deliver/ for people/ a verdict of guilty/ ethnic crimes/ charged.

6. 1864/ Alexander II/ the main documents/ in history/ known/ On November 20/ signed/ of Judicial Reform/ as Judicial Statutes.

7. an effectiveness/ the reasons/ are/ for such/ of jury trials/ What?

8. the United States/ of America/ has/ the most considerable/ support/ should/ worldwide/ given/ We/ admit/ that/ to judicial reform.

9. for jury/ eligible/ Who/ duty/ is?

10. the difference/ in pay/ is not/ An employer/ required/ for jury service/ to compensate.

11. over 70 years of age/ jury service/ may/ You/ if/ are/ you/ be/ excused/ from

12. for biases/ anyone/ grand jurors/ or/ other improper factors/ Does/

screen?

13. only/ cases/ by the prosecutor/ The grand jury/ brought/ hears/ to it.

14. be called/ a lawyer/ about/ his or her client/ to testify/ Can?

15. room/ his or her lawyer/ In/ the federal system / in/ the grand jury/ cannot/ a witness/ have/ present.

16. been/ human rights/ a fair trial/ in/ regional/ numerous/ The right/ defined/ and/ to/ has/ international/ instruments.

17. before/ the courts/ tribunals/ equal/ All/ shall/ persons/ be/ and.

18. confront/ embraces/ cross-examine/ witnesses/ also/ to/ to/ a fair trial/ The right/ the right/ and.

19. responsive/ to ensure/ multi-layered/ is/ a varied institution/ police/ your/ working/ service/ The modern/ safety.

20. neighborhood/ activity/ suspicious/ I/ my/ report/ Should/ in?

21. the House of Commons/ are/ MPs/ many/ How/ there/ in?

22. £142,500/ has/ that/ he/ be/ taking/ announced/ The Prime Minister/ a salary/ will/ of.

23. from/ Parliament/ financial/ opposition/ get/ Do/ parties/ help?

24. civil/ generally/ did/ between/ and/ law/ not/ The/ first/ civilizations/ distinguish/ law/ criminal.

25. place/ place/ laws/ are/ Many/ by threat/ enforced/ of/ criminal/ and/ punishment/ may/ particulars/ widely/ their/ vary/ from/ to.

26. is/ simply/ not/ a victim/ broken/ Causation/ is/ because/ vulnerable/ particularly.



Exercise B: Answer each question, choosing the response which has the correct word order:

1. **Q:** Who knows about this proposal?

A: ___¹ knows about this. It's a secret.

a) Really none; b) None really

2. **Q:** How many times did you tell him to write an appeal for reconsideration?

A: ___² told him once.

a) I only; b) Only I

3. **Q:** How much does the claimant expect to get in compensatory damages?

A: ___³.

a) A lot he expects; b) He expects a lot.

4. **Q:** Are you going to try hard to prove the alleged violations of your constitutional rights?

A: I ___⁴ to do my best.

a) try always; b) always try

5. **Q:** Did you call me?

A: Yes, I ___⁵.

a) called you many times; b) many times called you

6. **Q:** How many times have you been at the scene of the crime?

A: I have been ___⁶.

a) twice there; b) there twice

7. **Q:** What is your name? (during interrogation)

A: I'm not going to ___⁷.

a) tell you again; b) again tell you

8. **Q:** What do you think of the personal jurisdiction statutes in California?

A: I think they are ___⁸.

a) a little confusing; b) little a confusing

9. **Q:** Have you ever prepared such complaints before?

A: No, I've never tried ___⁹ before.

a) this to make; b) to make this

10. **Q:** Why did you give false information about the matter which have affected the outcome of the case?

A: I'm sorry. I was ___¹⁰ to help my brother.

a) trying only; b) only trying





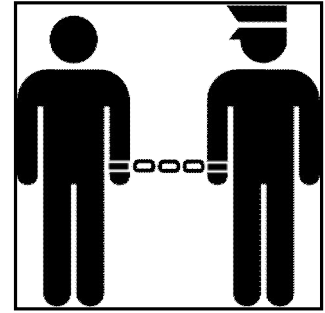
Exercise C: Put a WH-question (What) to each of the sentences given below. Mind the word order when constructing a question:

1. The police are persons empowered to enforce the law, protect property and reduce civil disorder.

What _____?

2. The powers of police include the legitimized use of force.

What _____?



3. The term is most commonly associated with police services of a state that are authorized to exercise the police power of that state within a defined legal or territorial area of responsibility.

What _____?

4. Police forces are often defined as organizations separate from any military forces, or other organizations involved in the defense of the state against foreign aggressors.

What _____?

5. Law enforcement, however, constitutes only part of policing activity which is concerned with the preservation of order.

What _____?

6. Alternative names for police force include constabulary or gendarmerie.

What _____?

7. Law enforcement officers frequently seek to question or interrogate the person they are investigating.

What _____?

8. Many people do not know that they have a right not to answer a law enforcement officer's questions.

What _____?

9. People often do not know that the seemingly innocent statements they are making may actually help law enforcement to prove the case against them.

What _____?

10. Generally, a law enforcement officer must have a search warrant in order to conduct a search.

What _____?

11. Citizens have the right to be free from unreasonable searches.

What _____?



Exercise D: Choose the most natural word order and put the tick at the end of the to confirm your choice:

1. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. She quietly was talking on the phone in her office.
- B. She was talking on the phone quietly in her office.
- C. She was talking quietly in her office on the phone.
- D. She was talking quietly on the phone in her office.



2. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. The new computer system very badly worked at first.
- B. The new computer system worked at first very badly.
- C. Very badly the new computer system worked at first.
- D. The new computer system worked very badly at first.

3. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. He organizes always everybody very well.
- B. He always organizes everybody very well.
- C. He always very well organizes everybody.
- D. He always organizes very well everybody.



4. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. They should repair it tomorrow quickly.
- B. They should tomorrow repair it quickly.
- C. They should repair it quickly tomorrow.
- D. They quickly should repair it tomorrow.

5. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. Are you working still in FBI? B. Are you still working in FBI?
- C. Are still you working in FBI? D. Still are you working in FBI?

6. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. I haven't found yet a better job.
- B. I yet haven't found a better job.
- C. I haven't found a better job yet.
- D. I haven't found a better yet job.

7. Choose the most natural word order:

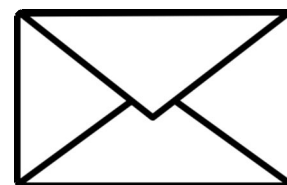
- A. He's sorted out already all those files.
- B. He's sorted all those files already out.
- C. He's sorted already out all those files.
- D. He's already sorted out all those files.



8. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. The post usually arrives on Monday late.

- B. The post usually on Monday arrives late.
- C. The post on Monday usually arrives late.
- D. The post usually arrives late on Monday.



9. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. He can never explain how to do it very clearly.
- B. He can explain never how to do it very clearly.
- C. He can explain how to do it never very clearly.
- D. He can explain how never to do it very clearly.

10. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. I think that's a very point important.
- B. I think that's a point very important.
- C. I think that's a very important point.
- D. I very think that's an important point.



11. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. We worked to get that contract very hard.
- B. We worked very hard to get that contract.
- C. We very hard worked to get that contract.
- D. Very hard we worked to get that contract.

12. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. We discussed very briefly it over lunch.
- B. We very briefly discussed it over lunch.
- C. We discussed it very briefly over lunch.
- D. We it discussed very briefly over lunch.



13. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. They are relocating next year the whole production plant to California.
- B. They are relocating to California the whole production plant next year.
- C. They are relocating the whole production plant to California next year.
- D. They are next year relocating the whole production plant to California.

14. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. He never very carefully reads my investigation reports.
- B. He never reads my investigation reports very carefully.
- C. He never reads very carefully my investigation reports.
- D. He reads never very carefully my investigation reports.



15. Choose the most natural word order:

- A. I've been on this working all morning.
- B. I've been on this all morning working.
- C. I've been working on this all morning.
- D. I've all morning been working on this.



Exercise E: Rewrite the sentences and put the adverbs in brackets in a correct position in the sentence. Check the type of adverb used:

1. The detective heard that the suspect confessed while he was outside the door (emotionally).

2. Crime is the breach of rules or laws for which some governing authority can prescribe a conviction (ultimately).

3. A normative definition views crime as deviant behavior that violates prevailing norms – cultural standards prescribing how humans ought to behave (normally).

4. Victims may not have the resources to investigate and seek legal redress for the injuries suffered while the enforcers appointed by the State often have better access to expertise and resources (formally).

5. In the United States since 1930, the FBI has tabulated Uniform Crime Reports from crime data submitted by law enforcement agencies across the United States (annually).

6. Modern societies regard crimes as offences against the public or the state, as distinguished from torts (generally).

7. Marilyn Sheppard was murdered while her husband Dr. Sam Sheppard slept downstairs (brutally).

8. How much do criminal acts and their representation in cinema, literature and music have in common (really)?

9. Many states at the time of Hammurabi functioned as theocracies, with codes of conduct religious in origin or reference (largely).

10. Embezzlers tend to have a gripe against their employer, financial problems, or an inability to resist the temptation of a loophole they have found (simply).

11. When a person is called for jury duty in the United States, that service is

not optional: one must attend or face strict penalties (usually).

12. Australia uses an adversarial system, and potential jurors are selected from an electoral roll (randomly).

13. If selected to be on a jury, you are to be asked to swear to find a verdict on the basis of the facts presented in court (actually; likely; solely).

14. The principle of a jury trial was established in the year 1215 in England when King John signed the Magna Carta (first).

15. If you have received a notice for jury duty in the mail, you may have groaned, wondering how you'd fit the service into your busy schedule (recently).

16. In law, a sentence forms the final explicit act of a judge-ruled process, and also the symbolic principal act connected to his function.

17. Within the civil law context, sanctions are monetary fines, levied against a party to a lawsuit or his attorney, for violating rules of procedure, or for abusing the judicial process (usually).

18. A cause of action encompasses both the legal theory – the legal wrong the plaintiff claims to have suffered and the remedy – the relief a court is asked to grant (generally).

19. US states recognize a privilege, limited to shopkeepers to detain for investigation anyone whom they suspect of having taken their goods or attempted to (usually; temporarily; reasonably; tortuously).

20. Not all detentions constitute false imprisonment, as to whether or not, it is based on the context of the situation (heavily).

21. Arbitrarily depriving an individual of their liberty is prohibited by the United Nations' division for human rights (strictly).

22. In the U.S. Copyright Act, two sections deal with improper assertions of copyright on public domain materials (only)._____



Exercise F: Rewrite the affirmative UNTRUE sentences given below into the negative sentences. Mind the word order:



Negative sentences tell us the opposite. The word *not* is included in the sentence. Don't forget that *not* is often shortened to *n't*, e.g., *can not* becomes *can't*, *does not* becomes *doesn't* and so on.

1. Christopher Columbus's efforts to obtain support for his voyages were hampered by a European belief in a flat Earth.

2. According to a study by a forensic anthropologist from the University of Pittsburg, George Washington had wooden teeth.

3. Napoleon I (Napoleon Bonaparte) was particularly short and had a Napoleon complex.

4. Entrapment law in the United States requires police officers to identify themselves as police in the case of a sting or other undercover work.

5. Putting a stick of margarine in a diesel engine will increase mileage by approximately 10%.

6. Because of their unusual shape, Hershey's Kisses contain more calories per ounce than the same amount of chocolate in other forms.

7. Anthropologists have discovered a tribe of South American monkeys with a rudimentary system of government analogous to our own three-branch form of government.

8. In America, motorists drive on the right side of the road; in the UK, motorists drive on the left side of the road; and in Norway, they drive in the middle.

9. A Native American tribe in South Dakota collects bottle caps left by campers, using them as currency. Several banks in the area now recognize the caps as legal tender.

10. The former US Vice President Dick Cheney is an accomplished studio

musician, and has played trumpet and woodwinds for the likes of Tony Bennett, Frank Sinatra and most recently Paul Anka.

11. The United States Postmaster General must be able to lick at least 40 stamps per minute.

12. By 2012, Pizza Hut hopes to focus less on pizza sales and more on its hut business.

13. In order to become licensed, a courtroom sketch artist must demonstrate the ability to make defendants look "shifty" or untrustworthy.

14. The National Weather Service has three employees who do nothing but watch for clouds that look like animals.

15. The LEGO group, creators of the children's building blocks, actually considered making full size Lego blocks to be used by Habitat for Humanity in building homes for third-world countries.



Exercise G: Form negative statements using the given twisted words or phrases. Mind the word order:

1. to/ file/going/ aren't/ against/ Petersons/ the/ Unfortunately/ a lawsuit/ X

2. been/ to/ he/ her/ before/ He/ prison/ met/ hadn't.

3. mustn't/ things/ from/ without/ the/ You/ office/ permission/ take.

4. who/ met/ court/ room/ I/ I/ a friend/ have/seen / not/ for ages/ the/ In

5. right/ could/ The/ thief/ because/ walk/ into/ the/ you/ house / the/ did/ lock/ not/ door.

6. finished/ to/ back/ since/ not/ camera/ my/ interrogation/ yet/ his/ detained/ couldn't/ let/ have/ the/ go/ person/ I/ I. _____

7. capacity/ Court/ as/ UN/ judicial/ Justice/ The/ the/ of/ to/ does/ even/ the/ have/ not/ International/ organ/ primary/ penalize. _____

8. this/ and/ between/ contained/ intended/ agreement/ Notice/ in/ in/ Legal/ Nothing/ Information/ is/ to modify/ currently/ amend/ or/ any/ effect/ you/ 3M, Inc. _____

9. allowed/ in/ Aliens/ own/ not/ to/ land/ Thailand/ are. _____

10. a position/ not/ lose/ I/ opportunity/ to/ such/ a manager/ the/ of/ lucrative/ sales/ get/ must. _____

11. before/ way/ We/ call/ be/ Tim/ we/ go/ to/ he/ not/ there/ and/ I/ don't/ to/ want /all/ the/ there/ for/ nothing/ over/ should/ might/ house/ his/ drive. _____

12. to/ not/ sports/ bad/ car/ It/ be/ your/ might/ a/ idea/ get/ a/ alarm/ for/ new/ car. _____

13. house/ been/ keys/ my/ have/ home/ I/ couldn't/ left/ at/ Simon's/ since/ I/ have/ able/ wouldn't/ to/ if/ drive/ I/ done/ had/ that. _____

14. efficient/ scientists/ may/ that/ automatically/ argue/ transfer/ of/ energy/ A/ group/ the/ of/ use/ more/ expensive/ but/ lights/ not/ to/ savings. _____

15. Thunderbird/ send/ and/ have/ more/ one/ mail-service/ configuring/ I/ instructions/ for/ still/ followed/ cannot/ mail/ for/ or/ of/ accounts. _____

16. on/ tax/ the/ income/ form/ committing/ you're/ to/ don't/ you/ the/ crime/ Every/ declare/ time/ or/ or/ pay/ due/ lie/ a/ form/ fail/ file a/ required/ a/. _____

17. criminal/ had/ the/ that/ told/ She the court at time/ she/ no/ experience. _____

18. support/ was/ not/ Miss/ from/ given/ Holt/ enough/ still/ her/company. _____

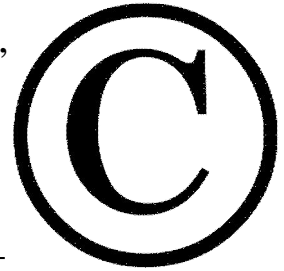
19. come/ I/ across/ couldn't/or/ these/ find/ yesterday/ documents. _____

20. leader/ will/ revolt/ against/ Libyan/ rule/ a/ Muammar/ step/ says/ he/ down/ his/ despite/ nationwide/ not/ Gaddafi. _____



Exercise H: Put 4 types of questions to each of the statements given below: General (G)/ Special (S)/ Disjunctive (D)/ Alternative (A):

1. A trademark is typically a name, word, phrase, logo, symbol, design, image, or a combination of these elements.



G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

2. The owner of a registered trademark may commence legal proceedings for trademark infringement to prevent unauthorized use of that trademark

G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

3. When a trademark is used in relation to services rather than products, it may sometimes be called a service mark, particularly in the United States.

G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

4. The essential function of a trademark is to exclusively identify the commercial source or origin of products or services.

G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

5. The law considers a trademark to be a form of property.

G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

6. Patent law generally seeks to protect new and useful inventions.

G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

7. While trademark law seeks to protect indications of the commercial source of products or services, copyright law, by comparison, generally seeks to protect original literary, artistic and other creative works.

G _____
S _____
D _____
A _____

8. Registered designs law generally seeks to protect the look or appearance of a manufactured article.

G _____
S _____
D _____
A _____

9. The major international system for facilitating the registration of trademarks in multiple jurisdictions is known as the "Madrid system".

G _____
S _____
D _____
A _____

10. A registered trademark confers a bundle of exclusive rights upon the registered owner, including the right to exclusive use of the mark in relation to the products or services for which it is registered.

G _____
S _____
D _____
A _____

11. Trademarks rights must be maintained through actual lawful use of the trademark.

G _____
S _____
D _____
A _____

12. A registered trademark can, theoretically, last forever.

G _____
S _____
D _____
A _____



Exercise I: Examine the text about Statutes and pay attention to the verb forms used. Underline constructions with Passive voice:

A statute is a formal written enactment of a legislative authority that governs a state, city, or county. The word is often used to distinguish law made by legislative bodies from case law, decided by courts, and regulations issued by government agencies. Statutes are sometimes referred to as legislation or "black letter law". As a source of law, statutes are considered primary authority as opposed to secondary authority. Ideally all Statutes must be in harmony with the fundamental law of the land, i.e. Constitution. This word is used in contradistinction to the common law. Statutes acquire their force from the time of their passage unless otherwise provided. Statutes are of several kinds; namely, Public or private; declaratory or remedial; temporary or perpetual. A temporary statute is one which is limited in its duration at the time of its enactment. It continues in force until the time of its limitation has expired, unless sooner repealed. A perpetual statute is one for the continuance of which there is no limited time, although it is not expressly declared to be so. If, however, a statute which did not itself contain any limitation is to be governed by another which is temporary only, the former will also be temporary and dependent upon the existence of the latter. Before a statute becomes law in some countries, it must be agreed upon by the highest executive in the government, and finally published as part of a code. In many countries, statutes are organized in topical arrangements or "codified" within publications called codes, such as the United States Code. In many nations statutory law is distinguished from and subordinate to constitutional law.



Exercise J: Rewrite the sentences below to eliminate passive voice. Highlight the doer of an action; do not highlight the receiver thereof:

1. Independence is gained by those on welfare when skills are taught that are valued by the marketplace.

2. Your figures were analyzed to determine their accuracy. Results will be announced when it is judged appropriately.

3. Before Ann Richards was elected governor of Texas, she was attacked as

a liberal Democrat with a background in which drugs may have been used; but her campaign was conducted in a way in which negative advertising was also used.

4. The author's impassioned narrative style is abandoned and in its place a cautious treatment of theories of conspiracy is presented.

5. Science education cannot be improved to a level sufficient to ensure that American industry will be supplied with skilled workers and researchers until more money is provided to primary and secondary schools.

6. It is my belief that the social significance of smoking is most clearly explicated through an analysis of peer interaction among adolescents. In particular, studies should be made of the manner in which relational interactive behavior is conditioned by social class.

7. The ability of the human brain to arrive at solutions of human problems has been undervalued, because studies have not been done that would be considered to have scientific reliability.

8. These directives are written in a style of maximum simplicity as a result of an attempt at more effective communication with employees with limited reading skills who have been hired in accordance with guidelines that have been imposed.

9. Payments should not be forwarded if there has not been due notification of this office.

10. Even though the results were checked, errors crept into the findings.

11. You indicated that you believe you are entitled to three months of credit on Chippewa County Case No. 98CF1015 for time you spent in the Pierce County Jail.

12. Crime statistics for the United States are published annually by the Federal Bureau of Investigation in the Uniform Crime Reports which represents crimes reported to the police.



It is interesting to know

There is a variety of types of questions we use every day:

- 1) An academic question is one whose answer may be of interest but is of no practical use or importance.
- 2) An embedded (also indirect) question is a part of a sentence that would be a question if it were on its own, but is not a question in the context of the sentence.



Such questions have affirmative word order, and are used in two situations:

a) in polite questions ("question within questions"):

E.g.: Could you tell me where the bus station is?

b) in reported speech:

E.g.: He asked me if I could help him.

3) A hypothetical question is one asked out of interest, as the answer will have no effect on the situation.

4) A leading question is one that suggests an answer, which implies that there is a proper answer. The term comes from law, where the courts insist that questions that suggest answers are not asked because they restrict the right of witnesses to speak freely.

5) A rhetorical question is one that requires no answer because the answer is obvious and doesn't need to be stated. The speaker is not looking for an answer but is making some kind of a point, as in an argument.

6) Fixed-alternative questions provide multiple-choice answers. These types of questions are good when the possible replies are few and clear-cut, such as age, car ownership, etc.

7) Open-ended questions allow the respondent to better express his/her answer, but are more difficult to administer and analyze. This technique is most appropriate for exploratory research.

8) Projective methods use a vague question or stimulus and attempt to project a person's attitudes from the response. The questionnaire could use techniques such as word associations and fill-in-the-blank sentences. Projective methods are difficult to analyze and are better suited for exploratory research than for descriptive or causal research.

9) Yes/No Questions are questions that can be answered with *yes* or *no*.

10) A tag question (also known as a tail question) can be made by making a statement and putting an auxiliary verb and a pronoun at the end.



◆ **Exercise 1.** Rewrite the sentences using the passive voice. Use the same tense. Mind the word order:

1. A hurricane has hit southern Florida and Hawaii. // Southern Florida and Hawaii ____¹ by a hurricane.
2. Everybody forbids everything. // Everything ____².
3. Everything they had overheard remained secret. // Everything that ____³ remained a secret.
4. I cannot forgive him his insulting words. // His insulting words ____⁴.
5. I will resolve our dispute the best way. // Our dispute ____⁵ the best way.
6. Nobody had known digital technologies for years. // Digital technologies ____⁶ for years.
7. Some people hurt themselves in that terrible accident yesterday. // Some people ____⁷ in that terrible accident yesterday.
8. They are going to forget everything. // Everything ____⁸.
9. They are lending the picture to a famous museum. // The picture ____⁹ to a famous museum.
10. They could not keep the agreement in confidence. // The agreement ____¹⁰ in confidence.
11. They did not mislead the public on purpose. // Public ____¹¹ on purpose.
12. They specified the terms of delivery before transportation. // The terms of delivery ____¹² before transportation.
13. They had fought the battles for independence. // The battles for independence ____¹³.
14. They have not awarded me due damages. // I ____¹⁴ due damages.
15. They have not provided me services enumerated in the contract. // The services enumerated in the contract ____¹⁵ to me.
16. They left the stolen car in the ditch. // The stolen car ____¹⁶ in the ditch.
17. They must have hidden the offensive weapon they had used to cause injury. // The offensive weapon they had used to cause injury ____¹⁷.
18. They say that bearing false witness is easy. // It ____¹⁸ that bearing false witness is easy.
19. We could not hear the testimony of the expert witness properly due to his low voice. // The testimony of the expert witness ____¹⁹ properly due to his low voice.
20. Nobody must lose his passport. // The passport ____²⁰.

◆ **Exercise 2.** Put the words into the correct order. The sentences would start with the word marked by capital letter:

1. expert/ are/ specialized/ involving/ issues/ testify/ Witnesses/ witnesses/ who/ on/ knowledge_____
2. as/ termed/ also/ practice/ malpractice/ Inadequate/ is_____
3. starting/ exam/ has/ Before/ to/ law/ the/ practice/ a/ person/ to/ pass/ bar_____
4. within/ can/ rule/ should/ Professional/ Ethics/ Each/ the/ Attorney's/ can't/ Code/ of/ that/ what/ explains/ an/ attorney/ or/ do/ be/ observed____
5. accepted/ evidence/ is/ the/ further/ appropriate/ If/ is/ for/ case/ the/ evidence/ generally/ for/ investigation_____
6. prejudice/ The/ that's/ a/ from/ on/ on/ not/ testimony/ personal/ witness/ not/ is/ based/ knowledge/ but/ unfair/ valid_____
7. facts/ stipulating/ of/ notices/ direct/ Public/ and/ affidavits/ records/ judicial/ certain/ are/ as/ known/ evidence_____
8. proceeding/ hearsay/ knowledge/ the/ the/ Evidence/ is/ evidence/ not/ from/ personal/ of/ witness/ known/ as_____
9. another/ unlawful/ the/ is/ without/ Manslaughter/ killing/ of/ malice.
10. examination/ cross-examination/ who/ A/ follows/ witness/ examined/ redirect/ the/ the/ usually/ and/ is/ by/ exercised/ party/ first/ the_____
11. he/ heard/ A/ who/ witness/ is/ testifies/ to/ one/ what/ has / or/ otherwise/ seen/ observed_____
12. order/ for/ maintaining/ An/ of/ the/ officer/ court/ keeping/ and/ appropriate/ decorum/ courtroom/ has/ of/ the/ jury/ bailiff/ responsible/ is/ custody/ who_____
13. aforethought/ The/ malice/ of/ a/ human/ unlawful/ being/ killing/ or/ implied/ by/ with/ either/ another/ is/ as/ expressed/ qualified/ murder____
14. witness/ evidence/ An/ opinion/ the/ thinks/ believes/ or/ in/ infers/ to/ regard/ facts/ dispute/ as/ in/ distinguished/ what/ of/ from/ facts/ his/ the/ knowledge/ of/ personal_____
15. that/ its/ Fair/ has/ is/ preponderance/ burden/ sufficient/ to/ in/ the/ of/ the/ create/ minds/ jurors/ established/ of/ fact/ the/ belief/ the/ which/ evidence/ bears/ the/ of/ proof / case/ party_____
16. guarantees/ due/ law/ Law/ in/ the/ its/ justice/ regular/ Courts/ course of/ through/of/ of/ administration/ the/ process_____
17. for/ one/ The/ jeopardy/ the/ is/ as/ or/ crime/ prohibits/ US/ Constitution/ same/ more/ than/ known/ which/ prosecution/ double_____

◆ **Exercise 3.** Correct the mistakes in these passive voice sentences. Rewrite the sentences using correct constructions:

1. Unemployment must dealt with by the government.

2. A plan to stop drug trafficking had been draw up by Interpol.

3. Most of the land in the area has be bought up by property developers.

4. A decision on dispute resolution must made today.

5. The remote airport had been being blown up by terrorists.

6. His confidence will be build up by this memorandum of agreement.

7. The passports must not been lost.

8. Some products can hardly be sold.

9. I was being woken up by the alarm clock at 5 o'clock.

10. Too much money are being spent on the army.

◆ **Exercise 4.** Complete the following sentences using the modal or semi-modal auxiliary verbs from the box below. Notice that in some cases more than one modal verb may be used:

can/ can't must/ mustn't should/ shouldn't ought to would need may
have to/ don't have to could/ couldn't might has to/ doesn't have to

1. I forgot to close the door. ___ you mind closing it for me?

2. I wrote this paper for my custom complaint last night. ___ you please read it over for spelling errors?

3. I need a notebook for my presentation. ___ I borrow yours?

4. I want to buy a new computer. ___ you give me some advice about buying a really fast and reliable one?

5. When you got lost in the forest you ___ have been very frightened.

6. Soldiers ___ disobey a superior officer.
7. To stay alive, people ___ breathe oxygen.
8. If you have an aquarium, you ___ give your tropical fish too much food or they'll die.
9. Harry has been driving all day – he ___ be tired.
10. You ___ speak to the driver when the bus is moving. It's dangerous.
11. Whatever you do, you ___ click with the right mouse button or the program will crash.
12. You ___ ask my permission. You ___ do what you want.
13. Ellen is having a lot of trouble in her Civil law class. She's failed the last two tests. I think she ___ hire a tutor.
14. David ___ answer your emails. There's no law about it.
15. Helen ___ make racist comments. It makes her seem really ignorant.
16. I told him that he ___ have paid his debt promptly.
17. Here are 10 bizarre facts about Facebook we ___ know to safely socialize in the net.
18. We didn't ___ to show our passports – ID cards were accepted.
19. ___ anyone call please take a message.
20. Every business owner ___ know about website security
21. Mrs. Scarlett's body was found in the lounge just moments ago, and it's still warm! Nobody has left the mansion this evening, so the killer ___ be someone in this room. It ___ be any one of us!
22. You ___ drive so aggressively. You'll end up killing someone.

◆ **Exercise 5.** Write questions in the tenses given in brackets. Decide whether or not to use an auxiliary:

1. you/know/the defendant/ personally (Simple Present) _____
2. who/commit/ violent/ robbery (Simple Past)_____
3. why/she/want/ to/ witness/in/ the/ trial (Simple Present) _____
4. he/convict/ to/ life-imprisonment (Present Perfect Simple)_____
5. she/face/ charges/ in/ manslaughter (will-Future) _____
6. they/be/ involve/ into/ a drug-trafficking/ scam (Simple Past)_____
7. he/finally/ launch /the/ sue/ against/ the/ blackmailer (Present Perfect Simple) _____
8. they/ testify/ before/ the/ Grand/ Jury/ now (Present Progressive)_____
9. they/ be/ the/ graduates/ of /W&L Law school (Simple Past) _____
10. where/he/be/ during/ the/ fire (Simple Present) _____

◆ **Exercise 6.** Fill in the blanks with suitable adverbs from the yellow box given below. The kind of adverb that can be used is indicated in the brackets. Note that the same adverb can be used more than once:

absolutely	quite	today	where	too	now	patiently	enough
pleasantly	seldom	yesterday	freely	why	often	therefore	quietly

1. I am not ___ sure about his guilt. (Adverb of degree)
2. You will ___ be provided with an application form to fill it in. (Adverb of time)
3. The paralegal worked ___ and with all his diligence at the scene of the crime. (Adverb of manner)
4. Unfortunately, we check the criminal database pretty ____. (Adverb of frequency)
5. You are ___ right, this proposal is nothing but a scam! (Adverb of degree)
6. He ___ surf in the net searching for computer news. (Adverb of frequency)
7. I have not seen him in the office ___, thus he couldn't have stolen your money due to his absence at least. (Adverb of time)
8. He did not work hard, ___ he failed to prove the case. (Adverb of reason)
9. He was about to mingle ___ in an unpleasant affair (Adverb of manner)
10. Are you ___ prepared for the testimony? (Adverb of manner)
11. I went to visit Bob at the detention center ___ (Adverb of time)
12. I know the place ___ the offenders hide their weapons. (Relative adverb)
13. ___ did you break into someone's house as an outrageous burglar? (Interrogative adverb)
14. He was short of money and felt as hungry as a wolf. That was ___ he committed larceny. (Interrogative adverb)
15. He walked in ___ so as to remain unauthorized. (Adverb of manner)
16. I was ___ surprised to win the case. (Adverb of manner)
17. I am ___ exhausted to discuss the terms of contract in full. (Adverb of degree)
18. He solved the problem quickly ___ to pass the test. (Adverb of degree)
19. We were unable to get funding and ___ had to abandon the project. (Adverb of reason)



◆ **Exercise 1.** Test your Understanding of Auxiliary Verbs. In each of the following sentences an auxiliary verb is missing. Write the missing auxiliary verbs to complete the sentences:

1. He ___¹ participate in the discussion yesterday because he was not ready.
2. She ___² been working in the garden since two this afternoon.
3. He ___³ escaped from the scene of a crime by the time the police arrived.
4. I'm afraid I ___⁴ be able to serve on a jury. I have a trustworthy excuse.
5. You've been once convicted and incarcerated, ___⁵ you?
6. They ___⁶ going to attend a meeting in Chicago as our representatives next week.
7. Why ___⁷ you speak so aggressively? The jurors were badly impressed.
8. She ___⁸ often complain though her living conditions are pretty poor.
9. He ___⁹ randomly surfing in the Internet. He's doing his research work at the moment.
10. The jurors ___¹⁰ been discussing the facts of the case for two hours with no result.
11. I ___¹¹ like jumping to conclusions. – Neither do I.
12. They ___¹² come on a tour to the forensic laboratory, will they?
13. Hostages ___¹³ been sitting in a dark room for two hours when the offender telephoned the police and asked for ransom.
14. I think, death penalty is the only deterrence to mischief. – So ___¹⁴ she.
15. What ___¹⁵ they doing to resolve their dispute?
16. Mary hasn't violated any traffic rules for a long time. – Neither ___¹⁶ John.
17. The detective ___¹⁷ go on vacation last summer. He was too busy.
18. He's studying Criminal law this semester, ___¹⁸ he?
19. I ___¹⁹ just been to the bank since my credit card ___²⁰ expired two weeks ago.
20. How long ___²¹ you been working for this law firm?
21. ___²² you normally obey the laws?
22. ___²³ you already told her about the grievous bodily harm her brother ___²⁴ had as a result of assault?
23. ___²⁵ they always cheat? What is the cause for their fraudulent conduct?
24. It ___²⁶ prohibited to smoke on the airplane.
25. What government ___²⁷ they have?

◆ **Exercise 2.** Put as many “yes / no” questions as possible to each of the sentences given below. Mind the word order:

1. The parties to this contract agree to provide each other with any information lawfully obtained or having already been in their possession concerning any changes in the market rate or price of the product in question. _____

2. The goods must be delivered to the purchaser within 14 days. _____

3. The commencement or termination of this agreement shall be governed by or construed in accordance with the laws of England. _____

4. Royalties will be paid in accordance with this agreement for a period of five years. _____

5. The Company agrees to provide training for service personnel. _____

6. The agreement may be terminated by notice. _____

7. In consideration of arrangement between the Seller and the Buyer it is agreed that the goods will be collected from the Seller’s warehouse at 21 Redwoods Road. _____

8. Interest will be charged on any unpaid installments after the expiration of a period of 28 days from the date hereof. _____

9. The obligations on us under this letter of undertaking shall not apply to any information which is required to be disclosed by applicable law or order of court of competent jurisdiction. _____

10. If any difference shall arise between the Proprietors and Publishers touching the meaning of this agreement or the rights and liabilities of the parties hereto, it shall be referred to arbitration in accordance with the provisions of the Arbitration Act 1996. _____

11. The Publishers shall produce the Licensed Edition at their own expense and within 12 months from the date of this agreement. _____

12. The Licensed Edition may be subject to renewal by mutual agreement between the parties hereto. _____

◆ **Exercise 3.** Fill in the blanks with the adverbs from the box to complete the sentences given below. Some adverbs may be used more than once:

personally	pretty	regularly	briefly	constantly	severely
hopefully	often	deeply	seriously	occasionally	normally
definitely	never	directly	clearly	immediately	strictly
gradually	always	certainly	usually	absolutely	badly

1. Be aware, that the notice I've sent you is ___¹ confidential.
2. He will have to limit his expenses ___² to be able to pay back his immense bank credit without a delay.
3. His temper changes ___³ like day and night and no one knows what he keeps in mind.
4. We'll ___⁴ disturb you unless you ___ apply for our help.
5. They ___⁵ took me ___⁶ due to my young age.
6. This morning they argued so ___⁷ that their neighbors had to call the constable to calm them down.
7. ___⁸ he will restore his civil rights in the absence of any strong counterclaims.
8. The policeman was ___⁹ wounded while attempting to stop and search the criminal.
9. Our professor expresses his ideas ___¹⁰, so ___¹¹ we don't have any questions to clarify the issue.
10. They didn't think twice and came ___¹² on our urgent call.
11. Mike goes to the local police department ___¹³ since he is on probation.
12. He ___¹⁴ speaks in a ___¹⁵ insulting manner but ___¹⁶ there is nobody to stop him.
13. They considered the contract ___¹⁷ since they have discussed all terms in advance.
14. I will ___¹⁸ provide you any legal advice at your request.
15. It is ___¹⁹ natural that he has ___²⁰ been a target of victimization on the part of his employer. He is ___²¹ said to be a whistle-blower.
16. Always try to breathe ___²² when you loose your temper. It ___²³ helps!
17. You have to address your speech ___²⁴ to the audience.
18. The black hackers are caught only ___²⁵ since they ___²⁶ hide their IP and ___²⁷ attempt to breach the computer systems as unidentified guys.

◆ **Exercise 4.** Choose the correct auxiliary from the multiple-choice options to complete the sentences given below:

1. The Labor government which came into power in 1997 ___¹ (is; was; have; has) instituted constitutional reforms in three distinct areas: the reform of the House of Lords, devolution, and the passing of the Human Rights Act 1998.
2. It began the long-overdue process of House of Lords reform by abolishing the voting rights of all the hereditary peers apart from ninety-two who remain until the House ___² (was; is; has been; have been) fully reformed.
3. Proposals put forward by the Royal Commission on the Reform of the House of Lords ___³ (was; were; has been; have been) published in 2000 as a command paper.
4. The Human Rights Act ___⁴ (was; were; has been; have been) passed in 1998, incorporating rights and freedoms guaranteed by the European Convention on Human Rights into the UK law.
5. Although the UK ___⁵ (has; was; were; had) been a signatory to the European convention on Human Rights since 1951, the Act provided for the provisions of the Convention to ___⁶ (are; is; was; be) incorporated into the domestic law.
6. The Ministry of Justice ___⁷ (is; has been; have been; was) established in 2007 replacing the Department for Constitutional Affairs (DCA), which in its turn replaced the Lord Chancellor's Department.
7. There ___⁸ (is; was; have; has) been extensive reform of civil procedure in recent years.
8. Civil cases at first instance ___⁹ (is; are; was; were) heard in the County Courts for minor claims or the High Court, which ___¹⁰ (is; are; was; were) divided into three divisions: Queen's Bench, Family and Chancery.
9. Criminal cases ___¹¹ (is; are; was; were) heard at first instance in the Magistrates' Courts, with more serious ones being heard in the Crown Court.
10. Civil cases ___¹² (could; might; may; can) be appealed to the Court of Appeal (Civil Division). Cases ___¹³ (could; might; may; can) also be appealed from the County Court to the High Court.
11. Appeals on criminal cases ___¹⁴ (is; are; was; were) heard in the Court of Appeal Criminal Division.
12. The consolidated Criminal Procedure Rules ___¹⁵ (is; are; was; were) introduced in 2005.

◆ **Exercise 5.** Look at the situations given below and put as many questions as possible to clarify the issue. Put 4 questions at least to correlate with the 4 question types: General (G), Special (S), Disjunctive (D) and Alternative (A):

Situation 1: Anna agreed to pay Paul £4000 to landscape the garden at her new house. Paul has now finished the work but Anna says she is not satisfied with it and she has refused to pay him.

G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

Situation 2: Bill has been married to Ruth for 14 years. However, he now wishes to leave Ruth and live with Jane. Bill and Ruth cannot decide how to share their property between them.

G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

Situation 3: Caroline and Susan want to start a business together. They need a solicitor to draft an agreement for them about how they will share all the responsibilities of the business.

G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

Situation 4: Daniel wants his two year old grandson, Wayne, to have his house when he dies. However, if Daniel dies before Wayne is 21 years old Daniel wants his friend, Harry, to look after the house until Wayne reaches 21 years old.

G _____

S _____

D _____

A _____

Situation 5: David has been using the Internet to send a lot of private emails at work and his boss says that this is an abuse of the time for which he is paid. David has been sent home from work on full pay because his boss is investigating the situation.

G _____

S _____

D _____
A _____

Situation 6: Emily has been in hospital and has been very ill after an operation. She thinks that the doctor was negligent and that he has made her illness worse by his actions. She wants to claim damages.

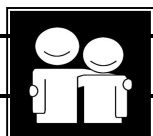
G _____
S _____
D _____
A _____

Situation 7: Phillip has received an offer to buy his house, but there is a problem with the exact position of the boundary. The buyer's solicitor must check this before the contract is signed.

G _____
S _____
D _____
A _____

Situation 8: Elisabeth's company transports goods from South America to England by ship. However, there was a bad storm at sea last week and the ship carrying the goods sank off the coast of France.

G _____
S _____
D _____
A _____



Have Fun! Lawyer Jokes!

The lawyers' stupid question jokes:

Q: What happened then?

A: He told me, he says, "I have to kill you because you can identify me."

Q: Did he kill you?

Q: Now then, Mrs. Johnson, how was your first marriage terminated?

A: By death.

Q: And by whose death was it terminated?

Q: Mrs. Jones, do you believe you are emotionally stable?

A: I used to be.

Q: How many times have you committed suicide?

Q: I show you Exhibit 3 and ask you if you recognize that picture?

A: That's me. Q: Were you present when that picture was taken?



It is interesting to know

1. There are many different types of question you can ask or be asked in a survey or interview:

1) *Scale questions* ask to select an item or a value from a fixed scale; 2) *Bipolar questions* force choice between very similar items or very different questions; 3) *Dichotomous or binary questions* have two possible opposing responses, for example, "Yes" and "No"; 4)

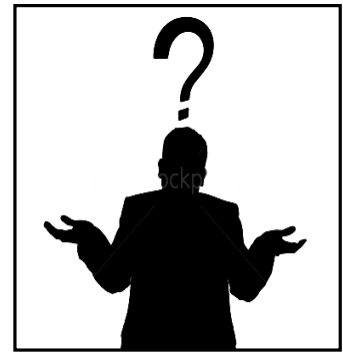
Selection questions ask to make a choice from a list of items given; 5) *Ranking questions* ask the respondent to sort items into a particular order or given criteria typically preference; 6) *Coding considerations* involve turning answers into numbers thus creating a set of data that can be analyzed, typically with a statistical package, etc.

2. Questions can be designed for open-ended, closed-ended or dichotomous, and multi-chotomous responses. *An open-ended question* is designed to encourage a full, meaningful answer using the subject's own knowledge or feelings. Open-ended questions are more objective and less leading than closed-ended questions and typically begin with words such as "Why" and "How", or phrases such as "Tell me about..." Often they are not technically questions, but statements which implicitly ask for a response. A closed-ended or dichotomous question encourages a short or single-word answer. *Multi-chotomous questions* have a range of responses as in a multiple choice test.

3. The respondents may not be able to answer some questions accurately. Two types of error may occur; they are: *telescoping error* and *recall loss*. *Telescoping error* is an error resulting from the tendency of people to remember events as occurring more recently than they actually did (dominates for recent events). *Recall loss* occurs when people forget that an event even occurred (dominates for events that happened in the distant past).

4. Questions give you a lot of power and benefits in any conversation:

1) *Control* – questions put you in charge of the conversation; 2) *Information* – you can discover all kinds of useful information to achieve your goals; 3) *Listening* – you may listen more than talk; 4) *Bonding* – you get opportunity of getting closer to other people; 5) *Persuading* – you may persuade people to think the same way you do, etc.





Grammar Rules: Tense forms: Present Simple Tense

Types of Verbs

It is extremely important to understand that NOT all English verbs are the same. English verbs are divided into three groups: Normal Verbs, Non-Continuous Verbs, and Mixed Verbs.

Normal Verbs

Most verbs are "Normal Verbs." These verbs are usually physical actions which you can see somebody doing. These verbs can be used in all tenses. E.g.: to run, to walk, to eat, to fly, to go, to say, to touch, etc.

Non-Continuous Verbs

The second group, called "Non-Continuous Verbs," is smaller. These verbs are usually things you cannot see somebody doing. These verbs are rarely used in continuous tenses. They include:

1) *Abstract Verbs* – E.g.: to be, to want, to cost, to seem, to need, to care, to contain, to owe, to exist, etc. 2) *Possession Verbs* – E.g.: to possess, to own, to belong, etc. 3) *Emotion Verbs* – E.g.: to like, to love, to hate, to dislike, to fear, to envy, to mind, etc.

Mixed Verbs

The third group, called "Mixed Verbs," is the smallest group. These verbs have more than one meaning. In a way, each meaning is a unique verb. Some meanings behave like "Non-Continuous Verbs," while other meanings behave like "Normal Verbs."

E.g.: to appear, to feel, to have, to hear, to look, to see, to weigh, etc.

E.g.: Donna appears (seems) confused. *Non-Continuous Verb*

My favorite singer is appearing (giving a performance) at the jazz club tonight. *Normal Verb*

Some Verbs Can Be Especially Confusing:

E.g.: *to be* – only rarely is "to be" used in a continuous form. This is most commonly done when a person is temporarily behaving badly or stereotypically. It can also be used when someone's behavior is noticeably different. E.g.: *to feel* – the second meaning of "feel" is very flexible and there is no real difference in meaning between "I don't feel well today" and "I am not feeling well today."

Verb Tense Overview

Verb tenses are tools that speakers use to express time in English language:

Simple Present	Simple Past	Simple Future
I study law at the University of Kazan.	Two years ago, I studied law in Europe.	– I am going to study law in the USA next year. – I will study there for 2 years, the most.
Present Continuous	Past Continuous	Future Continuous
I am studying Criminal law now, since we will have our final test soon.	I was studying Criminal law when you called me yesterday.	– I will be studying Criminal law when you arrive tonight. – I am going to be studying Criminal law when you arrive tonight.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect	Future Perfect
I have studied law in several different countries.	I had studied the basics of Common law before I moved to the USA.	– I will have studied every branch of law by the time I finish this course. – I am going to have studied every branch of law by the time I finish this course.
Present Perfect Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous	Future Perfect Continuous
I have been studying law for five years.	I had been studying Common and civil law for five years before I moved to the U.S.	– I will have been studying Criminal law aspects for over two hours by the time you arrive. – I am going to have been studying Criminal law aspects for over two hours by the time you arrive.

I. The Present Simple Tense

form = verb + s/es in the third person

It could be used in Positive, negative and question forms. Third-person negative forms and third-person questions are made using "does."

1. Repeated Actions – the Simple Present is used to express the idea that an action is repeated or usual. The action can be a habit, a daily or scheduled event, etc. It can also be something a person often forgets or usually does not do. It may be accompanied by an adverb of frequency.

E.g.: She always forgets her wallet at home.

E.g.: We meet regularly each morning to discuss our plans for the day.

2. Facts or Generalizations – the Simple Present can also indicate the speaker believes that a fact was true before, is true now, and will be true in the future. It is not important if the speaker is correct about the fact. It is also used to make generalizations about people or things.

E.g.: The Constitution is the framework of the US government (...) (fact).

E.g.: Written laws clarify the rights of citizens (example of generalization).

3. Scheduled Events in the Near Future – the Simple Present is occasionally used to talk about scheduled events in the near future. This is most commonly done when talking about public transportation, but it can be used with other scheduled events as well.

E.g.: The Patent Summit 2011 starts with an evening program & drinks on the 30th March.

4. Now (Non-Continuous Verbs) – the Simple Present is used sometimes to express the idea that an action is happening or is not happening now. This can only be done with Non-Continuous Verbs or certain Mixed Verbs.

E.g.: It depends on how much it costs. (Non-Continuous)

E.g.: I think we should leave immediately. (Mixed)

Active and Passive Forms

In active sentences, the thing doing the action is the subject of the sentence and the thing receiving the action is the object. Most sentences are active.

Thing doing action + verb + thing receiving action: E.g.: Five days a week Tom consults the clients.

In passive sentences, the thing receiving the action is the subject of the sentence and the thing doing the action is optionally included near the end of the sentence.

Thing receiving action + be + past participle of verb + by + thing doing action: E.g.: Five days a week the clients are consulted by Tom.



Your Training Exercises



Exercise A: Complete the sentences with the verbs given in brackets and use them in the Present Simple tense. Explain your choice:

1. The use of juries to decide cases ___¹ (to be) a distinguishing feature of the American legal system.
2. Few other countries in the world ___² (to use) juries as in the United States.
3. Because a jury ___³ (to decide) cases after "deliberations," or discussions, among a group of people, the jury's decision ___⁴ (to be) likely to have the input from many different people from different backgrounds, who ___⁵ (must) as a group, decide what ___⁶ (to be) right.
4. The judge assigned to the case ___⁷ (to oversee) the selection of jurors to serve as the jury for that case.
5. In some states, the judge ___⁸ (to question) prospective jurors; in others, the lawyers representing the parties under rules dictated by state law ___⁹ (to question) the jurors.
6. The US justice system ___¹⁰ (to operate) at two separate levels of courts: the State and the Federal courts.
7. The laws that ___¹¹ (to govern) day to day living ___¹² (to be) state laws, and the violation of federal laws ___¹³ (to include) offences involving federal government employees; crimes committed across state lines, for example, kidnapping or evading arrest; and fraud involving the national government, such as income tax or postal fraud.
8. In a criminal trial, the Government ___¹⁴ (to prosecute) an individual for an offence that ___¹⁵ (to threaten) the security of individual citizens or the society as a whole.
9. Usually, criminal trials ___¹⁶ (to involve) actions taken because of wicked intent, although cases of extreme negligence are also considered criminal.
10. In a civil trial, the dispute ___¹⁷ (to be) usually between two parties.
11. In both criminal and civil cases, the person charged ___ (to be) the defendant.
12. In criminal trials, the government ___¹⁸ (to represent) the prosecution, while in civil trials, the party which ___¹⁹ (to initiate) the action ___²⁰ (to be) the plaintiff.



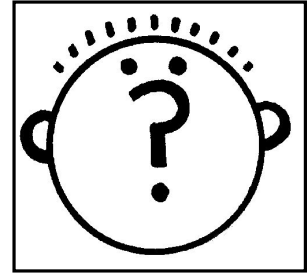
Exercise B: Examine and answer the questions given below. Make a story about yourself on the basis of your responses. Use the Present Simple tense for these purposes:

1. What is your name? _____
2. How old are you? _____
3. Where are you originally from? _____
4. Where do you live now? _____
5. What do you do for your living? _____
6. If you are a student, what kind of training do you have at the moment?

7. What University do you attend? _____
8. What is your future profession? _____
9. What are your favorite subjects at the University? _____
10. Describe yourself using the letters of your name as the first letter of each word: _____
10. Do you consider yourself smart and intelligent? _____
11. What are your weaknesses and strengths? _____
12. Do you have a special interest or hobby? _____
13. What are your three best talents or skills? _____
14. Do you have any bad habits? _____
15. Does it bother you when people judge you? _____
16. Do you get nervous easily? Why can you loose your temper? _____

17. How well do you get along with other people? _____
18. What do you do at the weekends? _____
19. Do you generally have a positive or negative outlook? _____
20. Are you determined in accomplishing any certain goals? _____

21. Do you often ask friends for their opinion about yourself? _____
22. What is your preferred way to communicate? _____
23. What historical figure do you admire and why? _____
23. How big is your family? _____
24. Is your family proud of you? _____
25. How do you maintain a positive work-life balance? _____
26. Are you a happy person? _____
27. Do you want to change anything in your life? _____





Exercise C: Put the words in correct order to form questions in the Present Simple tense about the basics of the US Copyright:

1. copyright/ what/ is _____
2. copyright/ works/ for/ what/ are/ eligible/ protection _____
3. copyright/ what/ does/ rights/ provide _____
4. does/ long/ last/ how/ copyright _____
5. domain/ public/ what/ is _____
6. domain/ as/ mean/ disclosure/ release/ the/ dissemination/ public/ does/ or/ same/ public _____
7. another/ the/ to/ or/ from/ transferred/ can/ be/ copyright/ author/ owner/ party _____
8. Web/ Copyright/ to/ does/ Internet/ the/ apply/ materials on/ Law/ the/ or/ the _____
9. U.S/ works/ other/ Government/ Government/ does/ have/ the/ the/ copyright protection/ in/ in/ countries _____
10. does/ U.S./ special/ to/ Government/ have/ the/ any/ rights/ copyrighted/use/material _____
11. fair/ Internet/does/ use/ to/ apply/ the _____
12. constitute/ copyright/ what/ acts/ a/ infringement _____
13. who/ the/ suits/ government/ infringement/ in/ copyright/ represent _____
14. U.S/ may/ organizations/ use/ foreign/ or/ of/ the/ Government/ works/ governments/ international _____
15. if/ its/ becomes/ material/ does/ copyrighted/ lose/ status/ copyright/ and/ protection/ it/ part/ of/ a/ or/ in/ a/ U.S./ is/ by/ the/ published/ Government/ Government/ compilation/ work/ included _____



Exercise D: Choose the correct verb form to complete each of the sentences given below. Explain what *type of verb* you fill in:

1. The term "electoral college" ____¹ (do; will do; does) not appear in the US Constitution.
2. Article II of the US Constitution and the 12th Amendment ____² (is referring; refer; refers) to "electors," but not to the "electoral college."
3. The Electoral College ____³ (is consisting; consist; consists) of 538 electors: one for each of 435 members of the House of Representatives and

100 Senators; and 3 for the District of Columbia by virtue of the 23rd Amendment.

4. State laws ____⁴ (are varying; varies; vary) on the appointment of electors.

5. The States ____⁵ (are preparing; prepares; prepare) a list of the slate of electors for the candidate who ____⁶ (is receiving; receive; receives) the most popular votes on a Certificate of Ascertainment.

6. The Governor of each State ____⁷ (is preparing; prepare; prepares) seven original Certificates of Ascertainment.

7. The electors ____⁸ (are meeting; meets; meet) in each State on the first Monday after the second Wednesday in December.

8. A majority of 270 electoral votes ____⁹ (being; was; is) required to elect the President and Vice President and no Constitutional provision or Federal law ____¹⁰ (are requiring; require; requires) electors to vote in accordance with the popular vote in their State.

9. If no presidential candidate ____¹¹ (is winning; win; wins) a majority of electoral votes, the 12th Amendment to the Constitution ____¹² (is providing; provide; provides) for the presidential election to be decided by the House of Representatives.

10. The House ____¹³ (is selecting; select; selects) the President by majority vote and ____¹⁴ (is choosing; choose; chooses) from the three candidates who ____¹⁵ (is receiving; receive; receives) the greatest number of electoral votes.

11. The vote ____¹⁶ (being; is; have) taken by State and each State delegation ____¹⁷ (is having; have; has) one vote.

12. If no Vice Presidential candidate ____¹⁸ (is winning; win; wins) a majority of electoral votes, the Senate ____¹⁹ (is selecting; select; selects) the Vice President by majority vote and each Senator ____²⁰ (is choosing; is chosen; has chosen) from the two candidates who ____²¹ (is receiving; receives; receive) the greatest number of electoral votes.

13. The United States Constitution and Federal law ____²² (is placing; places; place) certain responsibilities relating to the Presidential election upon State executives and the electors for President and Vice President.

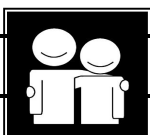
14. Neither the Constitution nor Federal law ____²³ (is prescribing; prescribes; prescribe) the manner in which each State ____²⁴ (is appointing; appoint; appoints) its electors other than directing that they ____²⁵ (being; was; be) appointed on the Tuesday after the first Monday in November.

15. The Constitution ____²⁶ (is forbidding; forbid; forbids) a Senator, Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States from being appointed as an elector.



Exercise E: Choose the correct word from the multiple choice options to complete the English proverbs given below. Try to figure out and convey the actual (true) meaning of these proverbs:

1. One swallow does not make ____¹.
a) a hammer; b) a summer; c) a hamburger
2. A guilty conscience needs no ____².
a) drugs; b) accuser; c) entertainment
3. A hedge between keeps ____³ green.
a) flowers; b) computers; c) friendship
4. Misfortunes tell us what ____⁴ is.
a) hardship; b) love; c) fortune
5. My house is my ____⁵.
a) automobile; b) castle; c) office
6. A lawyer's ____⁶ is worth nothing unless paid for.
a) property; b) opinion; c) education
7. A lean agreement is better than a fat ____⁷.
a) neighbor; b) rat; c) judgment
8. Actions speak louder than ____⁸.
a) the people in the street; b) disco music; c) words
9. Be slow to promise and quick ____⁹.
a) to cheat; b) to perform c) to escape
10. Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and ____¹⁰.
a) wise; b) angry; c) aggressive
11. Good beginning makes a good ____¹¹.
a) party; b) ending; c) failure
12. Happiness takes no account of ____¹².
a) time; b) your bank credit history; c) validity of your driving license
13. He that comes first to the ____¹³ may sit where he will.
a) restaurant; b) hill; c) concert hall
14. Lawyer never goes to ____¹⁴ himself.
a) law; b) the beach; c) church



Have Fun! Lawyer Jokes!

People who do lots of work make lots of mistakes. People who do less work make fewer mistakes. People who do no work make no mistakes. People who make no mistakes get promotion. That's why I spend most of my time sending e-mails & playing games at work. Ha-ha-ha!!!

**Exercise F: How much do you know about different professions?**

Match the persons listed in the yellow box with what they do:

accountant	assistant	beautician	barrister	botanist
druggist	dentist	essayist	physicist	grammarian
idealist	attorney	solicitor	surgeon	mathematician
physician	paralegal	policeman	satirist	nutritionist
bodyguard	referee	engineer	bailiff	interrogator
dramatist	guardian	shoemaker	technician	politician

1. ___¹ is a court attendant who maintains order in a courtroom.
2. ___² is someone who has special technical training and skills.
3. ___³ is someone who writes plays.
4. ___⁴ is one who works in a beauty salon and gives cosmetic treatment.
5. ___⁵ is someone who prepares financial and tax reports.
6. ___⁶ is guided more by ideals than by practical considerations.
7. ___⁷ is someone who uses irony, sarcasm or makes satirical comments.
8. ___⁸ is a person who writes essays and other literary works.
9. ___⁹ is a person who specializes in the nutritive value of various foods.
10. ___¹⁰ is a scientist who specializes in physics.
11. ___¹¹ is a person who makes or repairs footwear.
12. ___¹² is a member of a police force who looks after law and order.
13. ___¹³ a person who assists or provides help.
14. ___¹⁴ one who looks after, protects or defends someone or property.
15. ___¹⁵ is someone who conducts lawsuits/ gives legal advice in the USA.
16. ___¹⁶ is a person who specializes in numbers and the logic of quantity.
17. ___¹⁷ is a person who is trained and licensed to practice dentistry.
18. ___¹⁸ is a linguist who specializes in the study of grammar and syntax.
19. ___¹⁹ is a licensed medical practitioner who specializes in surgery.
20. ___²⁰ is a health trained professional who prepares and dispenses drugs.
21. ___²¹ is a person who practices general medicine and treats diseases.
22. ___²² advises clients on matters of law, prepares cases for barristers, etc.
23. ___²³ is someone who escorts and protects a prominent person.
24. ___²⁴ is a biologist who specializes in the study of plants.
25. ___²⁵ is someone who examines by questioning formally or officially.
26. ___²⁶ speaks in the higher courts on behalf of defense or prosecution.
27. ___²⁷ is someone who holds or seeks a political office.
28. ___²⁸ uses scientific knowledge to solve practical problems.
29. ___²⁹ decides a matter when the parties to it are in conflict.
30. ___³⁰ is a person with specialized training who assists an attorney.

**Exercise G: Match the *reporting verbs* below with their definitions:**

When introducing references into the text (citing) you should choose suitable *reporting verbs* as these can: 1) strengthen the arguments you are presenting; 2) help the reader understand why the source is relevant.

A reporting verb	A definition
1) admit	1) to explain or interpret something; remark
2) advise	2) to state with assurance; promise; guarantee
3) analyze	3) to give an account or representation of in words
4) announce	4) to examine and note the similarities or differences
5) assure	5) to give or restore confidence in; cause to feel sure
6) claim	6) to judge the merits/faults of; analyze and evaluate
7) comment	7) to make mention of; notice; be aware of
8) compare	8) to declare to be true
9) complain	9) to make reference to
10) conclude	10) to study or examine something in detail
11) confirm	11) to impart knowledge of some fact, state, event, etc.
12) convince	12) to recommend; suggest
13) criticize	13) to say casually; remark; become aware of
14) declare	14) to demand as being due; assert one's title or right to
15) demonstrate	15) to affirm formally/ under oath; confirm the truth of
16) discuss	16) to make a proposal, declare a plan for something
17) explain	17) to make known publicly or officially; proclaim
18) illustrate	18) to declare or make legally valid
19) indicate	19) to state emphatically and authoritatively
20) inform	20) to assert for a second or further time; make definite
21) insist	21) to depict or supply with an illustration
22) mention	22) to express resentment, displeasure, etc.
23) note	23) to decide by reasoning; come to a conclusion
24) observe	24) to speak with others about; talk over; debate
25) persuade	25) to explain or illustrate by experiment, example, etc.
26) point out	26) to make someone agree; persuade to do something
27) reassure	27) to give an exhibition of to an interested audience
28) report	28) to make clear/ comprehensible by giving reasons
29) show	29) to induce, urge, or cause to believe; convince
30) suggest	30) to serve as a sign; demonstrate the necessity
31) validate	31) to indicate or specify; present reasons in opposition
32) verify	32) to state, emphasize, hold firmly to an opinion, etc.



Exercise H: Now you know the meaning of most of the *reporting verbs*. Make your choice to fill in the gaps with the correct option:

1. The wrongdoer ___¹ that he is guilty of shoplifting.

a) shows; b) admits; c) insists; d) discusses

2. Please ___² for the purposes of investigation that the tapes are authentic.

a) report; b) persuade; c) verify; d) criticize

3. Natural theory ___³ that enacted laws should closely correspond to the laws of nature. **a) asserts; b) insists;**

c) advises; d) analyzes

4. Do you want me to ___⁴ to you the procedural steps of the jury trial?

a) declare; b) suggest; c) mention; d) explain

5. I ___⁵ with regret that you do not have the qualifications required for this job. **a) illustrate; b) demonstrate; c) confirm; d) advise**

6. The government newspaper ___⁶ that the recent promise not to increase prices on petrol would not be violated.

a) insists; b) persuades; c) complains; d) reports

7. He ___⁷ in his speech that he doesn't want to resign from active politics.

a) advises; b) claims; c) points out; d) compares

8. The prosecutor ___⁸ that the verdict is fair because the killed criminal was not armed. **a) analyzes; b) reassures; c) discusses; d) mentions**

9. They ___⁹ that the country broke the terms of the contract and did not pay the whole sum. **a) claim; b) show; c) analyze; d) indicate**

10. The officials publicly ___¹⁰ that the police undertake ineffective methods in combating organized crime.

a) persuade; b) illustrate; c) criticize; d) insist

11. The delay in investigation only ___¹¹ that the police have no definite proof of his guilt. **a) mentions; b) indicates; c) notes; d) observes**

12. Let's ___¹² how different attitudes to the death penalty are evaluated by the public. **a) compare; b) confirm; c) comment; d) reassure**

13. The note ___¹³ that the entrance may be used only by the authorized personnel. **a) insists; b) complains; c) informs; d) persuades**

14. The annual police report ___¹⁴ among the other reasons that careless driving causes most of the accidents in the area.

a) convinces; b) reports; c) insists; d) mentions

15. We ___¹⁵ that it is nobody but John who might have embezzled the funds since he has unlimited access to the company's financial database.

a) demonstrate; b) conclude; c) advise; d) explain





Exercise I: Read the instructions and examine *the adverbs of frequency* commonly used with the Simple Present Tense. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate adverbs to complete the sentences:



With *the present simple*, we often use *adverbs of frequency* to say ‘how often’ we do something. We usually put these adverbs in the middle of the sentence, between the subject and the verb. We can also put them at the very beginning or end of the sentence. This makes them stronger. There are some other expressions we can use to say ‘how often’. All of these longer phrases go at the beginning or the end of the sentence but not in the middle: E.g.: once in a while; every now and again; from time to time; etc.

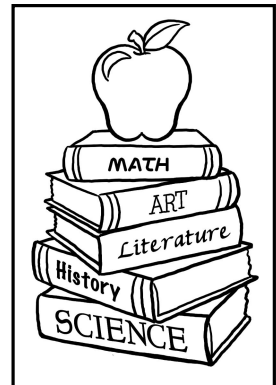
always	frequently	generally	hardly ever	infrequently	never
normally	occasionally	often	rarely	regularly	seldom
sometimes	usually	once in a while	every now and again	from time to time	ever

1. He ___¹ complies with the traffic rules and he rarely, if ___², obeys or follows the general social etiquette or the morals of his equals.
2. ___³ do we receive any apology when mistakes are made. (formal style)
3. Charlie ___⁴ wakes up early in the morning, as a result he is ___⁵ late to work, and his boss is ___⁶ upset with him.
4. She doesn't ___⁷ arrive until ten, since the law firm she works in ___⁸ provides legal services to their clients from 9 a.m. till 9 p.m.
5. Well, to tell you the truth, I am frightened of big crowdie cities so I only ___⁹ visit the capital on the urgent business matters, but it is not happening ___¹⁰ or ___¹¹.
6. ___¹² we may provide access to links or feeds to news database which may be of interests to our users. We ___¹³ work for the needs of our clients!
7. ___¹⁴, Mrs. Collins receives e-mail letters from her former students.
8. You look so much exhausted! Make sure you take a break every ___¹⁵.
9. The case is quite complicated, and we might ___¹⁶ discover the truth.
10. He visits the library ___¹⁷ nowadays, since he ___¹⁸ has a stable connection to the World Web and may find practically every resource or news just in one click.
11. Government analysts ___¹⁹ believe that the recession is over.
12. ___²⁰ it's so cold that I don't even want to leave the house.



It is interesting to know

1. Most verbs are "Normal Verbs." These verbs are usually physical actions which you can see somebody doing. These verbs can be used in all tenses. Normal Verbs are: to run, to walk, to eat, to fly, to go, to say, to touch, etc.



2. The group of Non-Continuous Verbs contains those verbs which are rarely or never used in continuous tenses, which can be divided into several categories:

Mental and Emotional Verbs	Communication Verbs	Abstract Verbs	Sense Verbs	Possession Verbs
believe dislike doubt imagine know like love hate prefer realize recognize remember suppose understand want wish	agree astonish deny disagree impress mean please promise satisfy surprise	be want cost seem need care contain owe exist	appear hear see seem smell sound taste	to possess to own to belong

3. Also, there is an interesting group of verbs, called "Mixed Verbs", whose meaning can change depending on which form they take – continuous or non-continuous:

Mixed Verbs	
to appear to feel to have to weigh to smell to think	to hear to look to see to miss to taste to be



Have Fun! Lawyer Jokes!

The European Union commissioners have announced that agreement has been reached to adopt English as the preferred language for European communications, rather than German, which was the other possibility. As part of the negotiations, the British government conceded that English spelling had some room for improvement and has accepted a five-year phased plan for what will be known as Euro-English (Euro, for short).



In the first year, "s" will be used instead of the soft "c". Certainly, sivil servants will resieve this news with joy. Also, the hard "c" will be replaced with "k". Not only will this klear up konfusion, but typewriters kan have one less letter.

There will be growing publik enthusiasm *in the sekond year*, when the troublesome "ph" will be replaced by "f". This will make words like "fotograf" 20 per sent shorter.

In the third year, publik akseptanse of the new spelling kan be expekted to reach the stage where more komplikated changes are possible. Governments will enkorage the removal of double letters, which have always ben a deterrent to akurate speling. Also, al wil agre that the horrible mes of silent "e"s in the languag is disgrasful, and they would go.

By the fourth year, peopl wil be reseptiv to steps such as replasing "th" by "z" and "w" by "v".

During ze fifz year, ze unesesary "o" kan be dropd from vords kontaining "ou", and similar changes vud of kors be aplid to ozer kombinations of leters. Und efter ze fifz yer, ve vil al be speking German like zey vunted in ze forst plas.

A Texan was visiting Harvard University, and was lost. He stopped a student and asked, "Do you know where the library is at?" "I sure do," replied the student, "But, you know, you're not supposed to end sentences with prepositions." "What?" "Prepositions! You ended your sentence with an 'at', which you aren't supposed to do." "Oh, ok," said the Texan, "Do you know where the library is at, asshole?"

Q.: What's the difference between a cat and a comma? A.: One has claws at the end of its paws and one is a pause at the end of a clause.

Q: What's another name for Santa's elves? A: Subordinate Clauses.

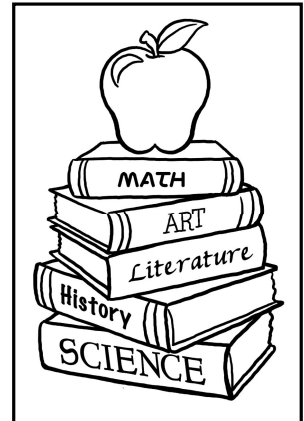


It is interesting to know

<http://www.whitesmoke.com/blog/grammar-exercises>

10 Tips on How to Approach Grammar Exercises:

1. Make sure you use as many kinds of grammar exercises in textbooks and websites so you get to target as many grammar skills as possible.
2. Always read the instructions well and make sure you know which language structures or grammar rules you are supposed to use in each exercise.
3. In sentence fill-ins, always read the whole sentence up to its end, understand the context, and only then address the grammar point at hand.
4. In longer cloze passages (paragraphs with missing words to complete), read at least 5 lines without completing anything in order to get clues from the context. These clues will help you with the grammar completions.
5. Do not over-drill simple one sentence grammar exercises. Try to get context-based full-text exercises that include your target language structure. These should be real-life texts, such as a letter to a friend or a paragraph detailing some instructions.
6. Try and actively use every new structure you learn in free speech and in writing. Make a checklist of structures you want to master in order to make sure you include them in your English writing.
7. Some language students get too obsessed with grammar and neglect vocabulary, reading, and writing activities. You must realize that grammar without vocabulary is like a necklace without colorful beads – boring...
8. Make sure you constantly review and recycle previously learned grammar structures with the new ones you learn. Practice with exercises in a rising level of difficulty as even simple grammar rules can be implemented in more advanced and complicated contexts.
9. Get hold of, or better yet, create your own grammar tables for reviewing. Have these tables in easy access when doing new grammar exercises.
10. Another good grammar exercise is to identify grammar structures in your reading and trying to explain why the author has chosen them over other structures.



Grammar is an important part of a language and is very important for your reading and comprehension as well as for your writing skills.



II. The Present Continuous (Progressive) Tense

form = am/is/are + present participle

The present continuous could be used in positive, negative and question forms. Third-person negative forms and third-person questions are made using "is" or "are". It can be used with Passive and Active forms. The sentences with the present continuous verbs may be coloured by time expressions: *always, only, never, ever, still, just, etc.*

1. Now – the Present Continuous is used with Normal Verbs to express the idea that something is happening now, at this very moment. It can also be used to show that something is not happening now.

E.g.: Aren't you consulting any clients in your law firm now?

E.g.: Are you preparing materials for your client's brief?

2. Longer Actions in Progress Now – In English, "now" can mean: this second, today, this month, this year, this century, and so on. Sometimes, we use the Present Continuous to say that we are in the process of doing a longer action which is in progress; however, we might not be doing it at this exact second.

E.g.: Are you working on any special projects at work?

E.g.: Aren't you working in the law firm now?

3. Near Future – sometimes, the Present Continuous is used to indicate that something will or will not happen in the near future.

E.g.: I am meeting some friends after work.

4. Repetition and Irritation with "Always" – The Present Continuous with words such as "always" or "constantly" expresses the idea that something irritating or shocking often happens. Notice that the meaning is like Simple Present, but with negative emotion. Remember to put the words "always" or "constantly" between "be" and "verb + ing".

E.g.: I don't like them because they are always complaining.

Non-Continuous Verbs/ Mixed Verbs

It is important to remember that *Non-Continuous Verbs* cannot be used in any continuous tenses. Also, certain non-continuous meanings for *Mixed Verbs* cannot be used in continuous tenses. Instead of using Present Continuous with these verbs, you must use Simple Present:

E.g.: She *is loving* this chocolate ice cream. (Not Correct)

E.g.: She *loves* this chocolate ice cream. (Correct)



Your Training Exercises



Exercise A: Use the words in parentheses to fill in the gaps with the verbs in appropriate tense forms. Comment your choice:

1. Mr. Hingham needs to visit his lawyer to get a contract for all of his employees to sign since he ___¹ (to open) a new factory.
2. The police ___² (to take) Mr. Dean to the police station because they say he has stolen someone's car.
3. When someone ___³ (to refuse) to pay money that they ___⁴ (to owe) to you, you ___⁵ (to have) a strong reason to start a claim in a court of law.
4. At the moment the attorney ___⁶ (to act) for the injured person in more than 20 different cases.
5. Mrs. Robson ___ always ___⁷ (to think) about what she wants to happen to her house and possessions after her death, so she ___ constantly ___⁸ (to change) her will from bad to worse, and her lawyer ___⁹ (to feel) just confused and frustrated as a result.
6. Mr. Algren ___¹⁰ (to need) to see his lawyer immediately since they say that the police ___¹¹ (to come) soon to interrogate him about the embezzled funds from the bank he ___¹² (to work) in.
7. When someone ___¹³ (to hurt) you as a result of his or her actions, you need to consult a lawyer who ___¹⁴ (to specialize) in the right area of tort.
8. Today I ___¹⁵ (to work) on a merger agreement, which ___¹⁶ (to mean) that two companies ___¹⁷ (to join) together to become one.
9. My sister ___¹⁸ (to work) in the Property department of her law firm and she ___¹⁹ (to act) for those people who ___²⁰ (to buy) and ___²¹ (to sell) houses.
10. When a student ___²² (to finish) his or her legal studies he or she has to make a two-year training contract with a law firm.
11. English law ___²³ (to influence) most of the law that ___²⁴ (to govern) international maritime cases.
12. When maritime lawyers ___²⁵ (to speak) informally they ___²⁶ (to divide) cases into two categories, i.e. "dry" cases and "wet" cases.
13. Dry cases ___²⁷ (to involve) problems with shipping contracts and wet cases ___²⁸ (to involve) problems at sea, such as ships that ___²⁹ (to have) accidents.
14. We ___³⁰ (to start) proceedings immediately and we will ___³¹ (to claim) £10,000 in damages.



Exercise B: Put the verb in brackets in the correct form to make different forms of the Present Continuous Tense: a positive (P); a negative form (N); yes/no (YNQ) and information questions (IQ).

The text describes what normally happens during *a hurricane*. Imagine that you are a television reporter describing the approach and the arrival of a hurricane. Because it is happening *now*, use the present progressive tense.

1. A hurricane ___¹ (to approach) the Florida coast.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

2. It ___² (to move) very quickly so people have time to react.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

3. Meteorologists at the National Hurricane Center ___³ (to monitor) the storm very carefully.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

4. They ___⁴ (to warn) the population that a hurricane ___⁵ (to approach).

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

5. Winds ___⁶ (to increase) in strength and the residents ___⁷ (to take) the necessary precautions.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

6. Many schools and businesses ___⁸ (to close) early and parents ___⁹ (to make sure) that their children are safe at home.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

7. Some people ___¹⁰ (to do) some last-minute shopping for food and emergency supplies and stores ___¹¹ (to run out) of things like candles, flashlights and batteries pretty fast.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

8. The government ____¹² (to encourage) those who live very close to the ocean to move to evacuation centers.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

9. Heavy traffic ____¹³ (to cause) huge bottlenecks on certain roads and bridges.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

10. The shelters ____¹⁴ (to fill up) with people from all over the area.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

11. Volunteers and government employees ____¹⁵ (to look) after their needs.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

12. They ____¹⁶ (to provide) blankets, bedding and food, but the evacuees ____¹⁷ (not to feel) very safe, however.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

13. Everybody ____¹⁸ (to stand) anxiously around the television, waiting for news.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

14. Some areas of the city ____¹⁹ (to experience) power outages.

N _____

YNQ _____

IQ _____

15. The police ____²⁰ (to patrol) the streets.

N _____

YNQ _____

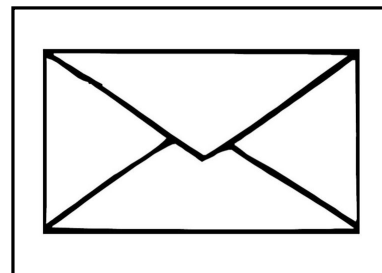
IQ _____



Exercise C: Read the letter to my friend Mary. Choose the correct tense form from the multiple-choice given in parentheses:

Hello, Mary,

How are you? I ___¹ (are hoping/ hope) you are well. You wanted me to tell you about my job. Well, I ___² (am working/ work) in an office in London just for the summer holidays. It's the Property department of the law firm and usually I



___³ (am spending/ spend) my time answering customers questions on the phone but as there are some people off sick I ___⁴ (am writing/ write) letters at the moment. I really ___⁵ (am liking/ like) the people who ___⁶ (are working/ work) here. They always ___⁷ (are helping/ help) each other out when there are any problems. Unfortunately, this week we ___⁸ (are doing/ do) a course in health and safety, which is a bit boring but it ___⁹ (is going/ goes) to be over soon. The good news is I ___¹⁰ (am learning/ learn) German as well during my lunchtime! I ___¹¹ (am not understanding/ do not understand) much at the moment but obviously, I ___¹² (am getting/ get) much better. I ___¹³ (am planning/ plan) to go to Antalya, Turkey, this coming fall and, they say, the Turks ___¹⁴ (are speaking/ speak) German better than English. Imagine, you are on the beach; the sun ___¹⁵ (is shining/ shines). You ___¹⁶ (are hearing/ hear) the waves dying on the sand. What a marvelous thought! O.k., I'd better stop now, my boss ___¹⁷ (is coming/ comes)! I ___¹⁸ (am going to write/ write) you pretty soon again.

Yours, Lindsey.



Exercise D: Decide if these English verbs are action verbs (AV), state verbs (SV), or can be both action and state verbs (ASV):



In English language there are verbs that are not normally used in the Continuous Tense, because they describe rather state than an action. They are called *state verb or non-progressive verbs*. E.g.: *like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, remember, forget, believe, mean, seem, understand, want, need, know, belong, own*. The verbs that can be used in the Continuous Tense are called *action verbs, or dynamic verbs, or finitive verb*. E.g.: *run, go, intervene, etc*. Some verbs can be *both state and action verbs* depending on their meaning: E.g.: *I think* you made a mistake (think = believe). E.g.: *I am thinking* about my mum now (think = mental process).

Verb	AV	SV	ASV	Verb	AV	SV	ASV
enjoy				worry			
weigh				agree			
mind				measure			
smell				prefer			
play				hear			
matter				burn			
contain				read			
look				feel			



Exercise E: Choose the correct form of the verb depending on whether *in this meaning* it is an action or a state verb:

1. a) Why are you smelling the exhibit?
b) Why do you smell the exhibit?
2. a) She is feeling his arm on her shoulder.
b) She feels his arm on her shoulder.
3. a) Are you having a written version of the law?
b) Do you have a written version of the law?
4. a) What are you thinking about the recent events?
b) What do you think about the recent events?
5. a) I am feeling much better today.
b) I feel much better today.
6. a) What are you looking at?
b) What do you look at?
7. a) I am not hearing his testimony.
b) I can't hear his testimony.
8. a) What are you thinking of the suspect?
b) What do you think of the suspect?
9. a) I am feeling we should go back home now.
b) I feel we should go back home now.
10. a) This bread is tasting strange. It can be poisoned.
b) This bread tastes strange. It can be poisoned.
11. a) I will write in my tax returns that I have two cars.
b) I will write ... that I am having two cars.
12. a) I see my lawyer tomorrow morning.
b) I am seeing my lawyer tomorrow morning.





Exercise F: Make the sentences with the present continuous tense form inside – *positive or negative* – depending on what is given:

1. The number of the employees leaving the company after five years is increasing. _____

2. According to the information given in this graph the number of people addicted to smoking is decreasing. _____

3. In the airport departure hall there are lots of people who are walking around the hall carrying their bags and dragging their suitcases. _____

4. A fat red-haired man is drinking from a paper cup and a red-haired boy sitting next to him, probably his son, is talking on his cell phone. _____

5. The officials are forcing the Prosecutor General to resign his job due to the disclosed malpractice. _____

6. We're currently working on the Smith vs. Arizona case. _____

7. They are staying at the Hilton hotel until the end of the week. _____

8. Consumers in the industrialized world are becoming increasingly concerned with healthy way of living. _____

9. Ford is aiming to corner 10% of car sales in the Asia-Pacific region within the next ten years. _____

10. The number of people all over the world using the Internet is constantly growing. _____

11. The Russian government is setting up reforms of its law enforcement agencies to strengthen interaction between police and the public, crime prevention, police observance of human rights standards, and evaluate the effectiveness of law enforcement agencies. _____



Exercise G: Choose the correct verb-form from the multiple-choice options to fill in the gaps in the sentences given below:

1. Compaq ___¹ computers, so ___² Samsung.

a) is making; b) makes; c) does; d) is doing

2. Hewlett - Packard ___³ a new advanced type of printer among its other high-tech projects.

a) is developing; b) develops; c) is taking; d) takes

3. According to Forex, the yen ___⁴ against the dollar and ___⁵ multi-week lows against both euro and dollar, due to escalating government debt ratio.

a) is reaching; b) reaches; c) is falling; d) falls

4. The European Commission ___⁶ eight European countries to the European Court of Justice over their bilateral aviation deals with the US to the detriment of the other European carriers.

a) is taking; b) takes; c) is leaving; d) leaves

5. Aboriginal groups and environmentalists ___⁷ protests across Australia after failing to block the development of a uranium mine on traditional aboriginal land in the Northern Territory.

a) plan; b) are planning; c) fight; d) are fighting

6. My career has had its ups and downs but I ___⁸ very well at the moment.

a) am making; b) make; c) am doing; d) do

7. Some of the UK best-known villains ___⁹ the telephone operators to fund activities ranging from drugs to terrorism, according to the British Telecommunications` (BT`s) investigations unit.

a) are supporting; b) support; c) are defrauding; d) defraud

8. British Telecommunications (BT) ___¹⁰ a new offensive against the barons of organized telephone crime who ___¹¹ it hundreds of millions of pounds annually.

a) cost; b) are costing; c) mounts; d) is mounting

9. According to securities law experts, the lawyers in the US ___¹² some 2,000 investors in "a fraud on the market" cases seeking billions of dollars in damages.

a) represent; b) are representing; c) mislead; d) are misleading

10. British Telecommunications (BT) ___¹³ offering a tailored fraud-detection service from Versant, a US company, to its large corporate customers, so fraud alert data could be shared across product lines.

a) considers; b) is considering; c) develops; d) is developing





Exercise H: Match the sentence in the left column with the comments on the usage of the verb tense-forms on your right:

Sentences in Present Simple and Present Continuous	PS or PS ?	Reasons to use the particular tense form
1) I am not working now. I am on holiday.	a) Describes future plans and arrangements.
2) I work as a paralegal.	b) Describes something colored by time expressions.
3) I'm seeing a very important customer in my office at 4 o'clock.	c) Describes timetable/ schedules/ itineraries/ etc.
4) What will you do if you fail your exam?	d) Describes regular habits and daily routines.
5) The Earth revolves around the Sun.	e) Describes things which are happening now/ temporary things.
6) I am studying to become a lawyer.	f) Describes feelings and emotions.
7) The President arrives in Norway on 17 September.	g) Describes usual, repeated, permanent, long-lasting things.
8) I don't like them because they are always complaining.	h) Describes the process of doing an action which is in progress.
9) She doesn't often go to the cinema.	i) Describes the fact.
10) All feminists hate men.	j) Describes usage in the conditional clause.
11) I love walking around late at night during the summer.	k) Expresses the idea that something irritating/ shocking often happens.
12) The meeting starts at 8 o'clock, but I have to come earlier to prepare everything.	l) Describes opinions and states of mind.
13) The population of the world is growing very fast.	m) Describes something colored by adverbs of frequency: always, hardly ever, never, rarely, etc.
14) What do you consider your best accomplishment?	n) Describes scheduled events in the near future.
15) Japanese people never wear shoes inside.	o) Describes changing situations.
16) I hate living in Seattle because it is always raining.	p) Describes generalization.



Exercise I: Read the instructions and examine the adverbs of time or time expressions commonly used with the Present Continuous Tense. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate adverbs:

at the moment	nowadays	still	at present	today
now	only	constantly	this year	never
soon	this term	tomorrow	always	next week
this morning	tonight	currently	usually	for a little while

1. The Prime Minister of the UK is ___¹ having talks in the USA.
2. We're meeting our lawyer at 9 o'clock ___² to work out our defense strategy for the coming trial.
3. I am ___³ wearing sun-glasses inside the courtroom as the lights are shining extremely brightly.
4. Food prices are ___⁴ going up ___⁵ due to the high level of inflation.
5. I am typing my report as I am leaving for the conference ___⁶.
6. ___⁷ the scientists are discussing one of the approaches in causation theory learning.
7. Professor Green is an experienced lecturer and while he is speaking, everybody is ___⁸ listening to him very attentively.
8. Your imagination is running away and as a result you are ___⁹ listening to what I say.
9. My cousin is coming from Ireland and I'm meeting him ___¹⁰.
10. The scientists are ___¹¹ carrying out a series of new experiments in this branch of industry.
11. The University is providing good learning facilities and organizing a range of study tours ___¹².
12. Many people in the world are ___¹³ starving and many more are suffering from malnutrition.
13. The European languages are very popular ___¹⁴ but Japanese and Russian languages are getting more popular ___¹⁵.
14. About two hundred students are taking evening classes ___¹⁶, since many of them need to learn a new foreign language to improve their job prospects ___¹⁷ but some of them are learning a new language ___¹⁸ purely for their pleasure.
15. She is having a hectic time ___¹⁹, since the academic year is starting pretty ___²⁰ and she hasn't completed the time-table form yet.



It is interesting to know

<http://www.fukkad.com/trivia/english2.shtml>

Have you ever wondered why foreigners have trouble with the English Language?

Let's face it, English is a language where:

There is no egg in the eggplant.

No ham in the hamburger,

And neither pine nor apple in the pineapple!

English muffins were not invented in England.

French fries were not invented in France.

We sometimes take English for granted.

But if we examine its paradoxes we find that,

Quicksand takes you down slowly,

Boxing rings are square,

And a guinea pig is neither from Guinea nor is it a pig.

If writers write, why the fingers don't "fing!"?

If the plural of tooth is teeth,

Shouldn't the plural of phone booth be "phone beeth"?

If the teacher "taught",

Why didn't the preacher "praught"?

If a vegetarian eats vegetables,

What the heck does a humanitarian eat!?

Why do people recite at a play – "Yet play at a recital"!?

"Park on driveways" and "Drive on parkways"!?

You have to marvel at the unique lunacy

Of a language where a house can "burn up" as "It burns down";

And in which you fill in a form – "By filling it out";

And a bell is only heard once it "goes"!?

English was invented by people, not computers,

And it reflects the creativity of the human race.

(Which is of course not a race at all...)

That is why: When the stars are out – "they are visible",

But when the lights are out – "they are invisible"

And why it is that when I wind up my watch – "It starts".

But when I wind up this observation – "It ends".





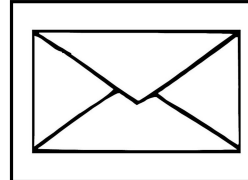
Your Self -Assessment Test

◆ **Exercise 1.** Put the verb in brackets in the correct form to complete each of the sentences in the letter given below. Choose between the Present Simple and Present Continuous tense forms:

Hi, Mary,

How ___ you ___¹ (do) at the moment? Having fun, I hope! I ___ finally ___² (write) you because I haven't heard from you for a very long time. Things really ___³ (fly) by a blink of an eye. Firstly, I ___⁴ (do apology) for that very long delay. Unfortunately, I ___⁵ (have) a pretty hectic time with my new job at the moment and besides, I ___ always ___⁶ (commute) back and forth to work for hours a day now. As a matter of fact, this ___⁷ (lead) me to a lot of frustration, because it ___ substantially ___⁸ (decrease) the rhythm of my life. The other day, I left the office quite early but that did not help at all. As a result of a newly introduced transport system, commercial buses ___ now ___⁹ (be kept off) the express lane and restricted to the service lane, so the challenging transport situation ___¹⁰ (make) it a better option for people to use their own cars. The consequences of such "innovative" transport system ___¹¹ (be) regular traffic jams, hundreds of nervous people and overcrowded buses. O.k., it ___¹² (be) enough for that. Some people erroneously ___¹³ (think) that law firms ___¹⁴ (be) beds of roses and gold. As you might know, I ___¹⁵ (work) in a large law office at present with about thirty other people, most of whom I ___¹⁶ (know) quite well. We ___¹⁷ (spend) most of the day together, so we have all become good friends. In fact, most of my colleagues ___¹⁸ (be) so interesting, that I ___¹⁹ (think) of writing a book about them! Take Helen Watson, for example. She ___²⁰ (run) the Real Estate department. At the moment she ___²¹ (go out) with Keith Balanchine, one of the junior partners, and they ___²² (seem) to be happy together. But everyone except Helen ___²³ (know) that Keith ___ always ___²⁴ (make) eyes at Susan Parker. But I ___²⁵ (know) exactly that Susan ___²⁶ (dislike) Keith, because she can't stand people who ___²⁷ (cheat) all the time! They ___²⁸ (rumor), that Keith ___ constantly ___²⁹ (deceive) poor Helen. Just fancy, he ___ also ___³⁰ (date) Betty Wills from the overseas department! And plenty of other interesting things ___³¹ (go on). I ___³² (not to know) if you ___³³ (be) still on friendly terms with Jack R. or not? Tell him I ___³⁴ (think) of him often. I ___³⁵ (hope), to hear from you soon!

Yours, Jane Barrows.



◆ **Exercise 2.** Choose the correct verb tense-form from the multiple-choice options to complete each of the sentences given below. Explain your choice. Start your comment with "I used ... tense because ...":

1. Nine planets ___¹ around the sun in our solar system.

a) orbit; b) is orbiting; c) orbiting; d) orbits _____

2. She ___² her mother-in-law. She doesn't like her at all.

a) hate; b) hates; c) is hating; d) hating _____

3. He ___³ repeatedly ___ me the same questions again and again. I really want him to move onto a new topic.

a) ask; b) asking; c) asks; d) is asking _____

4. When does the summit ___⁴?

a) begin; b) begins; c) beginning; d) began _____

5. I have a busy day again because we ___⁵ very important negotiations this week. **a) carry on; b) are carrying on; c) are being carried; d) carries**

6. The population of China ___⁶ up very fast, while the US dollar rapidly ___⁷ down. **a) rise; b) are rising; c) is rising; d) rises** _____

a) are getting; b) gets; c) get; d) is getting _____

7. You have surprised me, Steve. Your English ___⁸ better!

a) is getting; b) gets; c) get; d) is gotten _____

8. She can't answer the phone at the moment since she ___⁹ a lecture on current events in Egypt and antigovernment protests in Cairo.

a) is conducting; b) conducts; c) conducting; d) conduct _____

9. All day the CNN Cairo phone ___ constantly ___¹⁰, and dozens of lay people ___¹¹ the reporters to cover pro-government demonstrations as well.

a) is ringing; b) rings; c) are ringing; d) rang _____

a) urge; b) urges; c) is urging; d) are urging _____

10. Anderson Cooper of CNN reports that automatic weapon shooting has been heard near Cairo's Tahrir Square and fires ___¹² near the Egyptian Museum at the moment.

a) is burning; b) are burning; c) burns; d) burn _____

11. Police and army officers ___ just ___¹³ passively how the violence ___¹⁴ every minute, but they have no strategy to deal with situation.

a) is watching; b) watch; c) watching; d) are watching _____

a) escalated; b) escalates; c) are escalating; d) is escalating _____

12. Her plane ___¹⁵ for another hour. Let's wait in the lounge.

a) isn't arrives; b) doesn't arriving; c) hasn't arrived; d) doesn't arrive

◆ **Exercise 3.** Put the sentences into the negative (N) and interrogative (question - Q) forms. Comment on the tense-forms which have been used in the sentences given below:

1. Nixle (Community Information Service) offers a secure text-messaging platform and helps police send text-message alerts to local residents.

N _____

Q _____

2. The FBI focuses on threats that challenge the foundations of American society or involve dangers too large or complex for any local or state authority to handle alone.

N _____

Q _____

3. Federal law gives the FBI a range of legal authorities that enable it to investigate federal crimes and threats to national security, as well as to gather intelligence and assist other law enforcement agencies.

N _____

Q _____

4. According to the Washington Post, the FBI is building a vast repository controlled by people who work in a top-secret vault on the fourth floor of the J. Edgar Hoover FBI Building in Washington.

N _____

Q _____

5. The Internet Crime Complaint Center (IC3) is effectively combating the rapidly expanding cyber crime and, in many cases, participating in Cyber Crime Task Forces.

N _____

Q _____

6. In an effort to persuade a wary Internet auction participant, the perpetrator is proposing the use of a third-party escrow service to facilitate the exchange of money and merchandise.

N _____

Q _____

7. Identity theft occurs when someone appropriates another's personal information without their knowledge to commit theft or fraud.

N _____

Q _____

8. Typically, the victims are led to believe they are divulging sensitive

personal information to a legitimate business, sometimes as a response to an email solicitation to update billing or membership information, or as an application to a fraudulent Internet job posting.

N _____

Q _____

9. The lottery scheme deals with persons randomly contacting email addresses advising them they have been selected as the winner of an International lottery.

N _____

Q _____

10. Spoofing generally refers to the dissemination of email which is forged to appear as though it was sent by someone other than the actual source.

N _____

Q _____

11. Phishing is the act of sending an email, which is falsely claiming to be an established legitimate business in an attempt to steal the user's sensitive information and directing the user to visit a specified not genuine website.

N _____

Q _____

12. Ponzi or pyramid schemes are investment scams in which the offenders are promising the investors abnormally high profits on their investments.

N _____

Q _____

13. In the USA, people sending spam are violating the Controlling the Assault of Non-Solicited Pornography and Marketing (CAN-SPAM) Act, Title 18, U.S. Code, Section 1037.

N _____

Q _____

14. Spam also acts as the vehicle for accessing computers and servers without authorization and transmitting viruses and botnets.

N _____

Q _____

15. The foreign subjects allegedly are posting Internet auctions, but cannot receive the proceeds from these auctions directly because their location outside the United States makes receiving these funds difficult.

N _____

Q _____

◆ **Exercise 4.** Match *the adverb* or *time expression* from the right column with the sentence in the left column. Comment your choice:

Sentence	Adverb of frequency/ time expression
1) ___ ¹ , if an offender is carrying a gun during the crime, it is considered an armed robbery.	a) frequently
2) Tomorrow is our deadline, so we are working hard ___ ² to cope with the project.	b) while in prison
3) The railways system is very efficient as the trains ___ ³ arrive on time.	c) For the time being
4) In my opinion, some youngsters ___ ⁴ don't know what to do and are merely wasting their time.	d) sometimes
5) My partner ___ ⁵ drives alone due to his scare of car accidents.	e) constantly
6) I ___ ⁶ watch the police news to be aware of the modern techniques applied to combat criminality.	f) hardly ever
7) If any convicts are behaving very well ___ ⁷ they may be released on parole.	g) Usually
8) ___ ⁸ I'm living in a small town, but I hope to move soon.	h) often
9) I ___ ⁹ travel abroad, so I do not have troubles with visas and so on.	i) never
10) I'm not working ___ ¹⁰ due to the recent reprimand, so I don't know what to do all day.	j) regularly
11) I ___ ¹¹ see him among the prison inmates when I visit the Glasgow Central prison for the purpose of inspection.	k) this morning
12) Time ___ ¹² runs too fast when you're having fun.	l) generally
13) I ___ ¹³ visit the capital on a business trip.	m) rarely
14) She is ___ ¹⁴ complaining about the shortages in her miserable life. It is really disturbing!	n) this afternoon
15) Fortunately, not many people are smoking ___ ¹⁵ due to the wise propaganda of healthy living.	o) always
16) Mr. Behan ___ ¹⁶ admits his faults.	p) temporarily
17) I ___ ¹⁷ have a chance to speak in public.	q) nowadays
18) The case is going to the trial judge ___ ¹⁸ so he will have some extra time to study it in advance.	r) seldom

◆ **Exercise 5.** Change the given Active voice sentences into Passive ones. Mind the word order and the tense-forms of the given sentences:

1. I do not understand a word in his confusing and misleading speech.

Passive _____

2. She generally uses commuting by bus but the drivers are on strike.

Passive _____

3. He teaches foreign languages at the University though at the moment he is working with the travel company because his school is on holiday.

Passive _____

4. Our business usually makes money but we are doing rather badly just now due to the overwhelming economic crisis.

Passive _____

5. The police are usually asking the suspects lots of different questions to prove their guilt.

Passive _____

6. The Miranda Warning reaffirms the provisions of the Fifth Amendment to the United States Constitution which clearly state that no person can be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law.

Passive _____

7. Electronic money provides more security than cash because the lock function makes it difficult to steal.

Passive _____

8. When you are paying for your purchase by credit card, you must sign the payment slip to authorize your transaction.

Passive _____

9. We are trying to argue out this crucial international contract in every detail so as to make it a certain money-spinner for both parties.

Passive _____

10. While looking for a lawyer, the customers are normally looking for the best "name recognition".

Passive _____

11. The choice of venue involves a complex balancing of a number of factors.

Passive _____

12. Many victims of the Web auction frauds receive goods which are different from what they expect or not as advertised.

Passive _____



◆ **Exercise 1.** Put *yes/ no* and *WH* questions to each of the sentences given below. Mind the word order and the Present Simple tense:

1. As our society grows in complexity, the lawyer's role grows as well.

2. Lawyers interpret the law through actions and words for the protection of an individual, a business concern or an idea.

3. The education of lawyers never ends because they must constantly be abreast of information which may be of use to the client.

4. The vast majority of today's lawyers specify the types of clients and cases which they serve.

5. The practice of law includes so many alternatives that it is difficult to generalize at all.

6. Many lawyers in large corporate firms concentrate their efforts in mastering one particular area of specialization within the law, e.g. the intricacies of tax law.

7. Attorneys often serve primarily as advisors to corporate clients, rarely being involved with taking a case to court.

8. Litigation lawyers, on the other hand, prepare and present cases in court or negotiate to settle the case before the scheduled court appearance.

9. Practicing law in a small town or with a small community-based firm often means taking whatever cases walk through the door.

10. This kind of practice tends to focus more on the daily legal needs of individuals – drawing up wills or deeds, filing for divorces, getting someone out of jail on bond, settling personal damage suits in court – rather than the more technical and specialized needs of corporate clients.

◆ **Exercise 2.** Put the following words or phrases into a sentence in the Present Continuous tense:

1. fighting/ the/ begin/ like/ to/ look/ civil/ a/ war _____

2. her/ get/ expenses/ month/ higher/ every _____

3. car/ his/ trouble/ lot/ give/ of/ him/ a _____

4. New Zealand/ the worst/ influenza/ season/ suffer/ in/ a/ decade/ more/ than _____

5. sit/ I/ in/ front/ of/ right/ now/ my/ computer _____

6. my/ tree's/ branches / my/ neighbor/ trim/ which / his/ yard/ extend/ into _____

7. occur/ in/ California/ bus/ too/accident/ injuries/ often _____

8. for/ download/ what/ offer / the/ company/ software _____

9. more/ private/ applicants/ colleges/ admit _____

10. misguided/ young/ feminism/ how / our/ harm/ men _____

11. potential/ auction/ buyers/ how many/ website/ visit/ fraudulent _____

12. about/ deal/ police/ dig/ trying/ information/ The/ are/ to/ out/ the/ arms _____

13. clarify/ The/ of/ officer/ both/ planning/ to/ to/ tonight/ provide/ a cross-examination/ suspects/ the/ police/ case/ is _____

14. new/ identify/ I/ crime/ techniques/ am/ book/ reading/ a/ about/ invention/ the/ of/ police/ fascinating/ to _____

15. crew/ inventors/ project/ The/ the/ new/ hard/ of/ is/ working/ on _____

16. things/ nearer/ are/ by/ improving/ getting/ are/ Step/ step we to our goal/ after/ and day/ day _____

◆ **Exercise 3.** Check how you understand the difference between the Present Simple and Present Continuous tenses. Put a tick to confirm your answer:

№	Statement	Simple	Continuous
1	Which tense do you have to use with the signal words: <i>Listen!, Look!, now?</i>		
2	Which tense do you have to use with the signal words: <i>often, seldom, never?</i>		
3	For actions happening at the moment of speaking, we use ...		
4	For actions set by a timetable or schedule, we use ...		
5	In a story, for present actions happening one after another, we use ...		
6	For arrangements for the near future, we use ...		
7	For actions happening <i>regularly, often</i> or <i>never</i> , we use ...		
8	The verbs <i>be, have, like</i> and <i>want</i> are normally only used in ...		
9	The signal word <i>usually</i> indicates that we have to use ...		
10	Which tense do you have to use to speak about <i>a habit</i> or <i>hobby</i> ?		
11	Which tense do you have to use with the signal words: <i>sometimes, every day?</i>		
12	Which tense do you have to use with the signal words: <i>at the moment, right now?</i>		
13	Which tense do you have to use to express the idea that an action is repeated or usual?		
14	Which tense do you have to use to say that we are in the process of doing a longer action which is in progress?		
15	Which tense do you have to use to express the idea that something irritating or shocking often happens?		
16	Which tense do you have to use to make generalizations about people or things?		

◆ **Exercise 4.** Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple tense (do/does) or Present Continuous tense (is doing/ are doing):

1. The legal system ___¹ (affect) nearly every aspect of our society, from buying a home to crossing the street.
2. If you ___ really ___² (plan) to become a lawyer, you need to start developing a plan of action.
3. For a US citizen who ___³ (wish) to become a lawyer, the process ___⁴ (begin) by successfully completing a degree program at an accredited university or college.
4. Although lawyers ___⁵ (take) ultimate responsibility for legal work, they often ___⁶ (delegate) many of their tasks to paralegals.
5. At present, paralegals ___⁷ (assume) new responsibilities in legal offices and ___⁸ (perform) many of the same tasks as lawyers.
6. The tasks of paralegals ___⁹ (differ) widely according to the type of organization for which they work.
7. Employers ___¹⁰ (try) to reduce costs and increase the availability and efficiency of legal services now by hiring paralegals to perform tasks once done by lawyers.
8. In the litigation involving many supporting documents, paralegals usually ___¹¹ (use) computer databases to retrieve, organize, and index various materials.
9. Paralegals ___¹² (perform) a wider variety of duties nowadays, making them more useful to businesses.
10. As the law ___¹³ (become) more complex, paralegals ___¹⁴ (become) more specialized.
11. Corporate paralegals often ___¹⁵ (assist) attorneys with employee contracts, shareholder agreements, stock-option plans, etc.
12. Corporate paralegals regularly ___¹⁶ (monitor) and ___¹⁷ (review) government regulations to ensure that the corporation ___¹⁸ (operate) within the law.
13. Increasingly, experienced corporate paralegals ___¹⁹ (uphold) additional supervisory responsibilities, such as overseeing team projects.
14. More than 1,000 colleges and universities, law schools, and proprietary schools in the US ___²⁰ (offer) formal paralegal training programs.
15. Community legal service programs ___ constantly ___²¹ (provide) assistance to the poor, elderly, minorities, and middle-income families.
16. Wages of paralegals and legal assistants ___²² (vary) greatly.

◆ **Exercise 5.** Match the statement on your left with its description on your right. Comment the use of Present Simple or Continuous tense:

Statement	Description
1) The police officer is interrogating the suspect to clarify the details of the crime.	a) Indicates that something will happen in the near future.
2) He does not need help now.	b) States some obvious fact.
3) The jurors are definitely not listening to the expert witness with due attention.	c) Shows some passive action that is happening now.
4) She always loses control in the overcrowded places.	d) Shows generalization about people or things.
5) Law affects every aspect of our life.	e) Shows that an action is usual.
6) Are you working on any special projects at work?	f) Shows that something is happening now.
7) He never forgets his wallet.	g) Shows something that often happens.
8) Mr. Hayman is constantly disturbing his neighbors by abusive and aggressive behavior.	h) Shows that something is not happening now (Non-Continuous).
9) Representatives act in the name and on behalf of their electors.	i) Shows that something is not happening now.
10) Do you have your passport with you?	j) Shows daily/ scheduled event.
11) I am meeting my lawyer after work.	k) Shows the process of doing a longer action in progress.
12) When do we board the plane?	l) Shows that something will not happen in the near future.
13) Does he play soccer?	m) Shows that something shocking often happens.
14) Right now, the paralegal is writing a letter of complaint.	n) Shows some scheduled event in the near future.
15) I don't like them because they are always complaining.	o) Shows that something is happening now (Mixed Verb).
16) Isn't he coming with us tonight?	p) Stresses that the active action is going at this very moment.
17) The commuting train leaves every morning at 8 AM.	q) Shows that something irritating often happens.
18) Right now, the letter of complaint is being written by the paralegal.	r) Shows that someone has a hobby.



Grammar Rules: Tense forms: Simple Past

III. The Past Simple (Past Indefinite)Tense

Form = verb + ed (or irregular verbs)

It expresses actions in the past taking place once, never, several times; taking place one after another or in the middle of another action.

1. Completed Action in the Past – the Simple Past is used to express the idea that an action started and finished at a specific time in the past.

E.g.: A federal judge ruled Thursday that the new health-care overhaul law is constitutional.

E.g.: He didn't participate in deliberations due to his sickness.

2. A Series of Completed Actions – the Simple Past is used to list a series of completed actions in the past. These actions happen *once, never* or *several times*.

E.g.: He arrived from the airport at 8:00, checked into the hotel at 9:00, and met his lawyer at 10:00.

3. Duration in the Past – the Simple Past is used with a duration which starts and stops in the past. Duration is a longer action often indicated by expressions such as: *for two years, for five minutes, all day, all year, etc.*

E.g.: Jerry studied at W&L School of Law in Lexington, VA for 3 years.

4. Habits in the Past – this usage of the Simple Past describes a habit which stopped in the past. It can have the same meaning as "used to", we often add expressions such as: *always, often, usually, never, when I was a child, when I was younger, etc.*

E.g.: When I was younger, our family moved around a bit—we even lived in Las Vegas.

5. Past Facts or Generalizations – the Simple Past is used to describe past facts or generalizations which are no longer true. It is quite similar to the expression "used to."

E.g.: People paid much more to make cell phone calls in the past.

6. When-Clauses – "when-clauses" are important because they always happen first when both clauses are in the Simple Past.

E.g.: When I paid, they finally provided the room with an electrical heater.

7. The second conditional (conditional type II) – is a structure used for talking about unreal situations in the present or in the future.

Type II = if + past + conditional

E.g.: If I were you, I would drive more carefully in the rain.

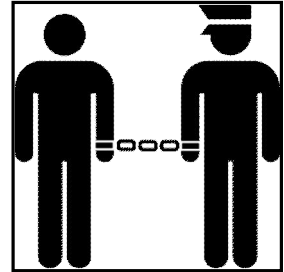


Your Training Exercises



Exercise A: Read the text and underline all verbs in *the Past Simple*. Also comment whether the actions in question are *active* or *passive*:

A Hermosa Beach man who cried for forgiveness five years ago before a judge sentenced him for the drunken-driving killing of a Lawndale man was shot in a San Luis Obispo prison when he attacked a guard and tried to escape, authorities said Wednesday.



Scott Brockman, 33, taken from the medium-security California Men's Colony to a San Luis Obispo medical clinic for an X-ray on Tuesday, was shot in the back by the guard when he tried to run and jump a fence, police said. "He started bashing on the guard and ran off," said San Luis Obispo police Capt. Bart Topsham. "The guard was able to get up and chase him down." Brockman, who had previously been convicted of drunken driving, was sentenced Nov. 19, 1997, in Torrance Superior Court to 14 years in prison following his guilty plea to voluntary manslaughter charges in the death of 27-year-old Jeffrey Dodley.

On Aug. 27, 1996, a drunken Brockman sideswiped a car on Hawthorne Boulevard, ran red lights in an escape attempt, and slammed into the back of Dudley's 1984 Nissan 200SX at Manhattan Beach Boulevard in Lawndale. The Nissan exploded into a fireball, enveloping the trapped or unconscious Dudley. Dudley, a teacher's assistant at a Lawndale elementary school who was starting a basketball league for children, died on his way back from a video store.

"These last months (in jail), I cried out to God, asking why he didn't take me instead of your son," Brockman cried at his sentencing. Brockman was one of two inmates taken Tuesday to the Raytel Medical Imaging office for X-rays. Lt. Larry Lizard, spokesman for the San Luis Obispo prison, said Brockman punched one of two corrections officers in the face and escaped out the back door of the building. The officer chased him, ordered him to stop and fired two shots. One struck Brockman in the back and exited his abdomen without hitting any vital organs. He was treated at a hospital and returned to prison Wednesday. Brockman, who had to serve nearly 12 years of his sentence before he is eligible for parole, now could be charged with battery on a peace officer and attempted escape with force or with violence.



Exercise B: Read the above given text one more time and answer the questions given below. Give full answers to be more exact:

1. How did the public come to know about the recent incident involving the inmates of the medium-security Men's Colony in California? _____

2. Describe what happened and list a series of completed actions in the past: _____

3. Was Scott Brockman considered a dangerous criminal before the incident? _____

4. What was Brockman sentenced and convicted for in 1997? _____

5. What charges did Brockman face before the actual trial back in 1997? _____

6. Describe the facts and details of the crime committed by Scott Brockman in 1996 and list them in a series of completed actions in the past: _____

7. Was it his first traffic offence when Brockman killed Dudley? _____

8. What did Dudley do for his living? _____

9. Where did Dudley ride when he died? _____

10. Did Brockman show remorse for his killing of Dudley? _____

11. How long did the prisoners serve their sentences before they are eligible for release on parole? _____

11. What were the circumstances under which Brockman was shot? _____

12. Brockman was given an X-ray after being shot, wasn't he? _____

13. Could Brockman die now as a result of his injuries after being shot? _____

14. Could Brockman stay in prison longer because of his attempted escape? _____

15. What new charges could he face because of his attempted escape and battery on a peace officer? _____

16. How does the Penal Code of California in its Section 2933.6 describe the misconduct committed by Brockman? _____

17. Could the officer who fired two shots be charged guilty for the injuries caused or reprimanded at least? _____



Exercise C: Put the verb in brackets into the correct tense form.
Then put *yes/no* and *Wh questions* to the sentences given below:

1. An Ipswich mother ___¹ (be fined) \$400 and ___² (order) to pay another \$50 when her son repeatedly ___³ (refuse) to go to school.

YNQ _____

WHQ _____

2. The mother ___⁴ (allow) her son to go on holiday during the school term.

YNQ _____

WHQ _____

3. The 36-year-old mother, who can not be named for legal reasons, ___⁵ (appear) before South East Suffolk Magistrates Court yesterday where magistrates ___⁶ (hear) her 14-year-old son ___⁷ (be) currently on holiday in Spain.

YNQ _____

WHQ _____

4. The boy ___⁸ (have) 45 unauthorized absences between October 15 and December 22 last year.

5. His absences ___⁹ (be blamed) on a late-night life style.

YNQ _____

WHQ _____

6. The mother ___¹⁰ (attend) parenting classes voluntarily on the recommendation of the court.

YNQ _____

WHQ _____

7. The Chairman of the bench David Coe ___¹¹ (ask) the notorious mother if she ___¹² (think) she ___¹³ (can) get her son back to school in future.

YNQ _____

WHQ _____

8. She ___¹⁴ (tell) the court that he ___¹⁵ (be) on holiday during the academic term because she ___¹⁶ (want) him to visit Spain long ago.

YNQ _____

WHQ _____

9. She ___ originally ___¹⁷ (be sentenced) to 60 days' jail, but this ___¹⁸ (be reduced) to fine and compensation on appeal.

YNQ _____

WHQ _____



Exercise D: Test your knowledge of the past simple irregular verbs. Open the brackets and fill in the blanks. Do not use contractions!



In English, *regular verbs* consist of three main parts: the root form –present, the simple past, and the past participle. Regular verbs have an -ed ending added to the root verb for both the simple past and past participle. Irregular verbs do not follow this pattern, and instead take on an alternative pattern. Irregular verbs may: 1) stay the same in *the base form, simple past, past participle*; 2) change their *vowel*; 3) change *completely*.

1. As we attempted to dispel the crowd, the violence only ___¹ (get) worse. Many people ___² (be) arrested and ___³ (spend) a night in jail.
2. The lawyer ___⁴ (give, gave) us a lot of confusing information on the case that we ___⁵ (feel) he was trying to cheat us.
3. The judge ___⁶ (strike) certain people nominated for jury service by cancelling their names until only the requisite number remained.
4. As the committee brainstormed about fundraising ideas, their initial thoughts ___⁷ (begin) to evolve into a masterful plan.
5. The collegiate incoherent protest speech ___⁸ (leave) the people scratching their heads.
6. I ___⁹ (throw, threw) away my old computer because it was no longer functional.
7. During his time in prison Malcolm Stunts ___¹⁰ (become) a devout Muslim and changed his name to Muhammad.
8. The police ___¹¹ (say) that they would dispatch a car to the accident.
9. J.R.R. Tolkien ___¹² (write) the book "Lord of the Rings" that ___¹³ (be) later developed into a movie.
10. The rebellion ___¹⁴ (rise up) the organized opposition to authority resulted in a civil war that ___¹⁵ (leave) many people dead or injured.
11. It was a sort of accepted unfair practice that Mr. Elbow constantly ___¹⁶ (browbeat) his employees into working more hours than prescribed by law.
12. When identity thieves ___¹⁷ (steal) Jack's credit card number, he ___¹⁸ (be) really upset. He ___¹⁹ (know) the effects ___²⁰ (can be) unpredictable.
13. Jessica ___²¹ (go) from city to city, each time with a new identity masquerading as an abused teenager when she ___²² (be) really in her 30s.
14. They ___²³ (say), the old iron bells ___²⁴ (ring) through the town summoning the volunteer firefighters.

15. The ambassador ____²⁵ (ride) to the meeting in a black limousine.
16. On the tenth anniversary of the Bay of Pigs in 1971, Hunt ____²⁶ (fly) to Miami and got back in touch with two Cuban exiles he had worked with during the anti-Castro battles of the early 60s.
17. The Transnational Organized Crime legislation ____²⁷ (give) police wider search and seizure powers, allowing them to board boats once they enter New Zealand's "contiguous zone", 24 nautical miles off the coast.
18. A nagging wife ____²⁸ (pay off) big-time for a New Jersey man, who ____²⁹ (win) \$100,000 a year for life in the lottery thanks to his insistent spouse.
19. The passenger plane's pilots ____³⁰ (take) evasive action to try and avoid a collision with a Suffolk-based US fighter jet.
20. Brockman ____³¹ (serve) nearly 12 years of his sentence before he ____³² (be) eligible for parole.
21. Mr. Theodore Dunnet, of Oxford, England, ____³² (run) amok in his house in December of 1972, where he ripped the telephone from the wall, ____³³ (throw) a television set and a tape-deck into the street, smashed to bits a three-piece suite, kicked a dresser down the stairs, and ____³⁴ (tear) the plumbing out of the bath. He offered this explanation for his behavior: "I ____³⁵ (be) shocked by the over-commercialization of Christmas."
22. The telephone ____³⁶ (ring) twelve times before Pablo ____³⁷ (will) lift the receiver. He prayed the call ____³⁸ (be) from a salesperson and not his psychoanalytic.
23. What ____³⁹ (make) this apprehension interesting ____⁴⁰ (be) the fact that when officers arrested the suspects, they ____⁴¹ (find) video recordings that the offenders had made of themselves burglarizing homes.
24. A man ____⁴² (go) into a drug store, pulled a gun, announced a robbery, and pulled a Hefty bag face mask over his head and realized that he had forgotten to cut eye holes in the mask.
25. Police in Los Angeles ____⁴³ (have) good luck with a robbery suspect who just ____⁴⁴ (can not) control himself during a lineup; so when detectives asked each man in the lineup to repeat the words, "Give me all your money or I'll shoot", the man shouted, "That's not what I ____⁴⁵ (say)!"
26. John Pearce, 32, ____⁴⁶ (come) to realize the hazards of daylight burglary when in the course of climbing through a window, his foot ____⁴⁷ (get) caught in the window, leaving him dangling upside-down in plain sight of pedestrians walking down the busy sidewalk. Onlookers proceeded to mock him mercilessly until police arrived.



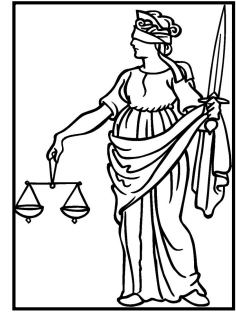
Exercise E: Choose the correct Simple Past verb from the multiple choice options. State whether the *verb* is regular or irregular:

1. Every time I ____¹ the e-mail last week, I ____² away a lot of junk mail or spam, as it's also called. It ____³ such a waste of time!

a) got; b) get; c) getted

a) throw; b) threw; c) thrown

a) were; b) was; c) been



2. Robert Stroud, a self-taught prison inmate ____⁴ most of his adult life in jail becoming an expert on criminal types, their habits and diseases.

a) spend; b) spended; c) spent

3. Hollywood's most famous murder case ____⁵ in post-war Los Angeles, when Elizabeth Short, an engagingly attractive young woman was found brutally murdered and dumped in a vacant lot.

a) taked place; b) took place; c) taken place

4. Robert Hanssen, a respected FBI agent, family man and staunch Catholic conservative ____⁶ a double life spying for the Russians, hanging around strip clubs and surfing Internet porn sites.

a) leads; b) led; c) leaded

5. Adrian Havill, the author of *The Spy Who Stayed Out in the Cold: The Secret Life of Robert Hanssen*, ____⁷ the inside story of the real man and how the FBI ____ him.

a) tells; b) told; c) telled

a) traps; b) trooped; c) trapped

6. Scores of women murdered in the Seattle area ____⁸ the longest running homicide investigation in the U.S. history, when finally DNA evidence ____⁹ the finger at Gary Leon Ridgway as the killer. His unsuspecting wife ____¹⁰ later of their remarkable relationship.

a) results in; b) resulted in; c) result in

a) pointed; b) painted; c) points

a) tolded; b) telled; c) told

7. What ____¹¹ as a perfect vacation ____¹² an unlikely turn when a young woman was found viciously murdered along the beach.

a) began; b) begun; c) begined

a) taken; b) took; c) takes

8. The most frightening of serial killers ____¹³ a handsome, educated psychopathic law student who ____¹⁴ and ____¹⁵ dozens of young college

women who looked very much like a young woman who ___¹⁶ her relationship with him.

a) were; b) was; c) been

a) stalken; b) stalk; c) stalked

a) murdered; b) murders; c) murder

a) broken off; b) broke off; c) breaks off

9. The notorious and very bizarre serial killer who ___¹⁷ himself The Zodiac remained one of the world's great unsolved cases.

a) called; b) calls; c) call

10. One of the most notorious serial killers, "respectable" Chicago-area businessman ___¹⁸ young men to work in his contracting company, then ___¹⁹ and murdered scores of them, burying their bodies on his properties. In prison, he ___²⁰ much focused of researching the psychopathic mind.

a) hiren; b) hires; c) hired

a) raped; b) rope; c) rippen

a) becommen; b) becomes; c) became

11. Brutally murdering prostitutes in London's notorious White chapel district, Jack the Ripper, the most famous serial killer of all time, ___²¹ a panic in 1888.

a) causeded; b) caused; c) cause

12. A criminal profile by former FBI profiler Gregg McCrary and a penetrating analysis of the many suspects ___²² light on this legendary killer, known as Jack the Ripper.

a) sheded; b) shode; c) shed

13. The extraordinary story of the Berrima Axe Murders and the ultimate capture of John Lynch, convict, bush ranger and serial killer ___²³ on the morning of February 19, 1841.

a) began; b) begun; c) begins

14. In March, 2004, the terrifying serial killer who called himself BTK ("Bind, Torture, Kill") ___²⁴ a very convincing letter to the local newspaper, taking responsibility for the September, 1986, unsolved death of Vicki Wegerle.

a) sended; b) sent; c) send

15. Sharon Wood, 24, ___²⁵ her secretarial job in Portland and entered the basement level of a parking garage to look for her car when a tall, pudgy man approached her. **a) left; b) leaved; c) leaves**





Irregular Verb Dictionary

Infinitive	Simple Past	Past Participle	Definition
arise	arose	arisen	occur, develop
awake	awoke/ awaked	awoken/ awaked	stop sleeping
backslide	backslid	backslid/ blackslided	revert to sin
be	was, were	been	exist in actuality
bear	bore	born/ borne	hold; carry
beat	beat	beaten/ beat	strike repeatedly
become	became	become	develop into
begin	began	begun	start; commence
bend	bent	bent	form a curve
bet	bet/ betted	bet/ betted	risk; guess; fancy
bid (farewell)	bid/ bade	bidden	wish; say; greet
bid (offer)	bid	bid	propose price
bind	bound	bound	fasten; wrap; tie
bite	bit	bitten	grip; cut off
bleed	bled	bled	lose/ emit blood
blow	blew	blown	exhale hard
break	broke	broken	separate; damage
breed	bred	bred	produce; raise
bring	brought	brought	carry; take
broadcast	broadcast/ broadcasted	broadcast/ broadcasted	transmit; relay
browbeat	browbeat	browbeaten/ browbeat	frighten; oppress
build	built	built	form; establish
burn	burned/ burnt	burned/ burnt	destroy by fire
burst	burst	burst	explode
bust	busted/ bust	busted/ bust	break; split
buy	bought	bought	purchase
cast	cast	cast	throw; indicate
catch	caught	caught	capture; seize
choose	chose	chosen	pick out, select
cling	clung	clung	remain close
clothe	clothed/ clad	clothed/ clad	put clothes on
come	came	come	arrive; reach
cost	cost	cost	be priced at
creep	crept	crept	go stealthily

crossbreed	crossbred	crossbred	produce a hybrid
cut	cut	cut	chop; split; divide
daydream	daydreamt/ daydreamed	daydreamt/ daydreamed	indulge in fantasy
deal	dealt	dealt	be concerned with
dig	dug	dug	excavate; unearth
disprove	disproved	disproven/ disproved	prove to be false
dive (jump)	dove/ dived	dived	plunge into water
dive (scuba)	dived/ dove	dived	swim under water
do	did	done	perform; execute
draw	drew	drawn	portray; attract
dream	dreamt/ dreamed	dreamt/ dreamed	have dreams
drink	drank	drunk	take in liquids
drive	drove	driven	operate a vehicle
dwel	dwelt/ dwelled	dwelt/ dwelled	live; stay; reside
eat	ate	eaten	have a meal
fall	fell	fallen	move downward
feed	fed	fed	give food
feel	felt	felt	perceive by senses
fight	fought	fought	struggle against
find	found	found	discover by search
fit (change)	fitted/ fit	fitted/ fit	modify; tweak
fit (be right)	fit/ fitted	fit/ fitted	match
flee	fled	fled	run away
fling	flung	flung	throw with force
fly	flew	flown	go by air
forbid	forbade	forbidden	prohibit
forecast	forecast	forecast	predict; plan
forego (forgo)	forewent	foregone	precede in time
foresee	foresaw	foreseen	act in advance
foretell	foretold	foretold	tell beforehand
forget	forgot	forgotten/ forgot	fail to remember
forgive	forgave	forgiven	excuse for a fault
forsake	forsook	forsaken	abandon; give up
freeze	froze	frozen	change to ice
frostbite	frostbit	frostbitten	injure by freezing
get	got	gotten/ got	receive; earn
give	gave	given	deliver voluntarily

go	went	gone	travel; proceed
grind	ground	ground	reduce to powder
grow	grew	grown	increase in size
handfeed	handfed	handfed	feed by hand
handwrite	handwrote	handwritten	write by hand
hang	hung	hung	swing; suspend
have	had	had	possess
hear	heard	heard	become aware of
hew	hewed	hewn/ hewed	cut; chop; axe
hide	hid	hidden	keep out of sight
hit	hit	hit	affect
hold	held	held	keep; maintain
hurt	hurt	hurt	cause pain; injure
inbreed	inbred	inbred	develop within
inlay	inlaid	inlaid	decorate
input	input/ inputted	input/ inputted	enter data/program
interbreed	interbred	interbred	hybridize
interweave	interwove/ interweaved	interwoven/ interweaved	blend together
interwind	interwound	interwound	become joined
jerry-build	jerry-built	jerry-built	build cheaply
keep	kept	kept	retain possession
kneel	knelt/ kneeled	knelt/ kneeled	rest on knees
knit	knitted/ knit	knitted/ knit	join closely
know	knew	known	perceive directly
lay	laid	laid	place; put; set
lead	led	led	guide; direct
lean	leaned/ leant	leaned/ leant	incline; recline
leap	leaped/ leapt	leaped/ leapt	act impulsively
learn	learned/ learnt	learned/ learnt	gain knowledge
leave	left	left	go away
lend	lent	lent	give/ allow the use
let	let	let	give permission
lie	lay	lain	be lying
lie (not truth)	lied	lied	tell an untruth
light	lit/ lighted	lit/ lighted	set on fire; ignite
lip-read	lip-read	lip-read	interpret by lip
lose	lost	lost	be deprived of
make	made	made	cause to exist

mean	meant	meant	convey; refer to
meet	met	met	come together
miscast	miscast	miscast	act unusually
misdeal	misdealt	misdealt	deal incorrectly
misdo	misdid	misdone	do wrongly
mishear	misheard	misheard	misunderstand
mislay	mislaid	mislaid	put incorrectly
mislead	misled	misled	lead into error
mislearn	mislearnt/ mislearned	mislearnt/ mislearned	learn wrongly
misread	misread	misread	read inaccurately
misset	misset	misset	set/ place wrongly
misspeak	misspoke	misspoken	speak mistakenly
misspell	misspelt/ -ed	misspelt/ misspelled	spell incorrectly
misspend	misspent	misspent	spend improperly
mistake	mistook	mistaken	identify wrongly
misteach	mistaught	mistaught	instruct wrongly
misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood	misinterpret
miswrite	miswrote	miswritten	write carelessly
mow	mowed	mowed/ mown	cut down
offset	offset	offset	compensate for
outbid	outbid	outbid	bid higher than
outbreed	outbred	outbred	produce offspring
outdo	outdid	outdone	exceed in action
outdraw	outdrew	outdrawn	extract
outdrink	outdrank	outdrunk	exceed in drinking
outdrive	outdrove	outdriven	provide power
outfight	outfought	outfought	defeat in a battle
outfly	outflew	outflown	surpass in flying
outgrow	outgrew	outgrown	grow too large
outleap	outleapt/ -ed	outleapt/ outleaped	surpass in leaping
outlie	outlied	outlied	exceed in lying
outride	outrode	outridden	ride faster
outrun	outran	outrun	escape from
outsell	outsold	outsold	sell more than
outshine	outshone/ -ed	outshone/ -ed	shine brighter than
outshoot	outshot	outshot	shoot better than
outsing	outsang	outsung	surpass in singing
outsit	outsat	outsat	outstay

outsleep	outslept	outslept	exceed in sleeping
outsmell	outsmelt/ -ed	outsmelt/ -ed	smell so to irritate
outspeak	outspoke	outspoken	speak better than
outspeed	outsped	outsped	excel in speed
outspend	outspent	outspent	outdo in spending
outswear	outswore	outsworn	outdo in swearing
outswim	outswam	outswum	excel in swimming
outthink	outthought	outthought	outwit
outthrow	outthrew	outthrown	excel in throwing
outwrite	outwrote	outwritten	excel in writing
overbid	overbid	overbid	bid higher than
overbreed	overbred	overbred	breed to excess
overbuild	overbuilt	overbuilt	erect too many
overbuy	overbought	overbought	buy too much
overcome	overcame	overcome	defeat or succeed
overdo	overdid	overdone	exaggerate
overdraw	overdrew	overdrawn	exaggerate
overdrink	overdrank	overdrunk	drink to excess
overeate	overate	overeaten	consume too much
overfeed	overfed	overfed	feed excessively
overhang	overhung	overhung	extend over
overhear	overheard	overheard	hear without intent
overlay	overlaid	overlaid	cover
overpay	overpaid	overpaid	pay too much
override	overrode	overridden	rule against
overrun	overran	overrun	overwhelm
oversee	oversaw	overseen	supervise
oversell	oversold	oversold	overpraise
oversew	oversewed	oversewn/ -ed	sew with stitches
overshoot	overshot	overshot	go too far
oversleep	overslept	overslept	sleep longer
overspeak	overspoke	overspoken	speak too much
overspend	overspent	overspent	spend in excess of
overspill	overspilt/ -ed	overspilt/ -ed	change residence
overtake	overtook	overtaken	catch up with
overthink	overthought	overthought	think hard
overthrow	overthrew	overthrown	rule against
overwind	overwound	overwound	wind too tightly
overwrite	overwrote	overwritten	write new data

partake	partook	partaken	participate
pay	paid	paid	recompense for
plead	pleaded/ pled	pleaded/ pled	offer reasons
prebuild	prebuilt	prebuilt	build in advance
predo	predid	predone	do in advance
premake	premade	premade	make in advance
prepay	prepaid	prepaid	pay for beforehand
presell	presold	presold	sell in advance
preset	preset	preset	set beforehand
preshrink	preshrank	preshrunk	decrease before
proofread	proofread	proofread	read for errors
prove	proved	proven/ proved	establish validity
put	put	put	place in; set
quick-freeze	quick-froze	quick-frozen	freeze rapidly
quit	quit/ quitted	quit/ quitted	depart from; leave
read	read	read	obtain data
reawake	reawoke	reawaken	awake again
rebid	rebid	rebid	offer a revised bid
rebind	rebound	rebound	put a new cover
rebroadcast	rebroadcast/-ed	rebroadcast / -ed	repeat the broadcast
rebuild	rebuilt	rebuilt	remodel
recast	recast	recast	cast/ model anew
recut	recut	recut	separate again
redeal	redealt	redealt	deliver again
redo	redid	redone	do over again
redraw	redrew	redrawn	draw differently
refit (replace)	refit/ refitted	refit/ refitted	repair
refit (retailor)	refitted/ refit	refitted/ refit	use second time
regrind	reground	reground	crush again
regrow	regrew	regrown	grow anew
rehang	rehung	rehung	fix/ attach again
rehear	reheard	reheard	hear again
reknit	reknit/ -ed	reknit/ -ed	remake a fabric
relay	relaid	relaid	control; supply
relay (pass)	relayed	relayed	pass along
relearn	relearnt / -ed	relearnt / relearned	learn again
relight	relit/ -ed	relit/ -ed	ignite again
remake	remade	remade	make again/ anew
repay	repaid	repaid	do in return

reread	reread	reread	read anew/ again
rerun	reran	rerun	broadcast again
resell	resold	resold	sell to an end user
resend	resent	resent	send back/ again
reset	reset	reset	set again; restore
resew	resewed	resewn/ resewed	sew again
retake	retook	retaken	take back/ again
reteach	retaught	retaught	instruct again
retear	retore	return	separate again
retell	retold	retold	render verbally
rethink	rethought	rethought	change one's mind
retread	retread	retread	do over again
retrofit	retrofit/ retrofitted	retrofit/ retrofitted	provide with parts
rewake	rewoke/ rewaked	rewaken/ rewaked	awake again
rewear	rewore	reworn	change dress
reweave	rewove/ reweaved	rewoven/ reweaved	renew the pattern
rewed	rewed/ rewedded	rewed / rewedded	marry again
rewet	rewet/ rewetted	rewet / rewetted	recharge a firearm
rewin	rewon	rewon	win back/ again
rewind	rewound	rewound	wind again; anew
rewrite	rewrote	rewritten	write again
rid	rid	rid	free from
ride	rode	ridden	travel in a vehicle
ring	rang	rung	produce a sound
rise	rose	risen	move upward
roughcast	roughcast	roughcast	prepare in rough
run	ran	run	move swiftly
sand-cast	sand-cast	sand-cast	produce
saw	sawed	sawed/ sawn	divide with a saw
say	said	said	express in words
see	saw	seen	perceive by sight
seek	sought	sought	search for
sell	sold	sold	deliver for money
send	sent	sent	dispatch
set	set	set	fix firmly

sew	sewed	sewn/ sewed	do needlework
shake	shook	shaken	move back/ forth
shave	shaved	shaved/ shaven	crop; trim
shear	sheared	sheared/ shorn	remove with razor
shed	shed	shed	diffuse
shine	shined/ shone	shined/ shone	emit light
shit	shit/ shat/ shitted	shit/ shat/ shitted	inform
shoot	shot	shot	fire a shot
show	showed	shown/ showed	display
shrink	shrank/ shrunk	shrunk	become smaller
shut	shut	shut	become closed
sight-read	sight-read	sight-read	act not prepared
sing	sang	sung	produce tones
sink	sank/ sunk	sunk	move down
sit	sat	sat	be seated
slay (kill)	slew/ slayed	slain/ slayed	kill violently
slay (amuse)	slayed	slayed	impress
sleep	slept	slept	be asleep
slide	slid	slid	move smoothly
sling	slung	slung	hang loosely
slink	slinked/ slunk	slinked/ slunk	walk stealthily
slit	slit	slit	cut into strips
smell	smelled/ smelt	smelled/ smelt	inhale the odor
sneak	sneaked/ snuck	sneaked/ snuck	move furtively
sow	sowed	sown/ sowed	propagate
speak	spoke	spoken	deliver a speech
speed	sped/ speeded	sped/ speeded	proceed quickly
spell	spelled/ spelt	spelled/ spelt	name the letters
spend	spent	spent	pay out; expend
spill	spilled/ spilt	spilled/ spilt	allow to run
spin	spun	spun	rotate
spit	spit/ spat	spit/ spat	expel; eject
split	split	split	separate into parts
spoil	spoiled/ spoilt	spoiled/ spoilt	damage; impair
spoon-feed	spoon-fed	spoon-fed	feed with a spoon
spread	spread	spread	be extended
spring	sprang/ sprung	sprung	move quickly
stand	stood	stood	be upright

steal	stole	stolen	appropriate
stick	stuck	stuck	puncture
sting	stung	stung	wound painfully
stink	stunk/ stank	stunk	smell badly
strew	strewed	strewn/ strewed	spread here/ there
stride	strode	stridden	walk in long steps
strike (delete)	struck	stricken	damage; destroy
strike (hit)	struck	struck/ stricken	hit sharply
string	strung	strung	thread on
strive	strove/ strived	striven/ strived	exert much effort
sublet	sublet	sublet	rent to another
sunburn	sunburnt/ sunburned	sunburnt/ sunburned	get a sunburn
swear	swore	sworn	make a promise
sweat	sweat/ sweated	sweat/ sweated	excrete moisture
sweep	swept	swept	clear away
swell	swelled	swollen/ swelled	increase
swim	swam	swum	move in water
swing	swung	swung	move back & forth
take	took	taken	gain possession
teach	taught	taught	give instructions
tear	tore	torn	pull apart
telecast	telecast	telecast	broadcast
tell	told	told	communicate
test-drive	test-drove	test-driven	evaluate condition
test-fly	test-flew	test-flown	make control
think	thought	thought	believe; suppose
throw	threw	thrown	propel; reject
thrust	thrust	thrust	push
tread	trod	trodden/ trod	place the foot
typecast	typecast	typecast	play the same role
typeset	typeset	typeset	compose
typewrite	typewrote	typewritten	write; type
unbend	unbent	unbent	become less tense
unbind	unbound	unbound	unfasten; set free
unclothe	unclad/ -ed	unclad/ unclothed	uncover; lay bare
underbid	underbid	underbid	propose less
undercut	undercut	undercut	charge less
underfeed	underfed	underfed	give too little food

undergo	underwent	undergone	experience
underlie	underlay	underlain	be the basis of
undersell	undersold	undersold	sell for less
underspend	underspent	underspent	spend less
understand	understood	understood	comprehend
undertake	undertook	undertaken	agree to start
underwrite	underwrote	underwritten	guarantee; promise
undo	undid	undone	cancel or reverse
unfreeze	unfroze	unfrozen	make available
unhang	unhung	unhung	remove hangings
unhide	unhid	unhidden	discover; disclose
unknit	unknit/ -ed	unknit/ unknitted	weaken; destroy
unlearn	unlearnt/ unlearned	unlearnt/ unlearned	try to forget
unsew	unsewed	unsewn/ unsewed	undo; rip apart
unslung	unslung	unslung	remove ropes
unspin	unspun	unspun	untwist
unstick	unstuck	unstuck	free; loosen
unstring	unstrung	unstrung	loosen the strings
unweave	unwove/ unweaved	unwoven/ unweaved	unfold; undo
unwind	unwound	unwound	undo; unravel
uphold	upheld	upheld	give moral support
upset	upset	upset	disturb stability
wake	woke/ waked	woken/ waked	rouse from sleep
waylay	waylaid	waylaid	wait to attack
wear	wore	worn	have on
weave	wove/ weaved	woven/ weaved	make cloth
wed	wed/ wedded	wed/ wedded	take as a spouse
weep	wept	wept	express grief
wet	wet/ wetted	wet/ wetted	dampen
whet	whetted	whetted	sharpen; stimulate
win	won	won	achieve victory
wind	wound	wound	blow; cover
withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn	remove; retire
withhold	withheld	withheld	refuse to share
withstand	withstood	withstood	oppose with force
wring	wrung	wrung	twist to squeeze
write	wrote	written	put in writing



Exercise F: Read the story about the Death of Michael Jackson.

Rewrite sentences in passive (underlined) into the active sentences:

1. On June 25, 2009, less than a month before he was scheduled to begin a series of comeback concerts, paramedics were called to Michael Jackson's rented home in Holby Hills near Los Angeles where they found him unconscious and not responding. _____



2. They were unable to revive the "King of Pop," and Jackson was pronounced dead at the L.A. Medical Center. _____

3. Michael Jackson's personal doctor, Dr. Conrad Murray, was officially charged with the singer's death by Los Angeles prosecutors last June. _____

4. To be more exact, Dr. Conrad Murray was charged with involuntary manslaughter in the case. _____

5. After the pop singer was found unresponsive in his bed, Dr. Murray did not call 9-1-1 for at least 21 minutes and then he failed to reveal to emergency personnel and hospital staff that he had administered the anesthetic propofol. _____

6. Besides, the security guards were also ordered by Dr. Murray to remove incriminating medical evidence from Jackson's bedroom. _____

7. When paramedics were finally called to his home, they found Jackson not breathing or responding and they were not able to revive him as he was transported to L.A. Medical Center. _____

8. For the purposes of intensified investigation of the death of pop star Michael Jackson, the federal Drug Enforcement Administration was requested for help from the Los Angeles Police. _____

9. The request was another indication that Jackson's doctors and medications were highly suspected as possibly contributing to his death. _____

10. In June, 2010 the doctor was pleaded not guilty to involuntary manslaughter in the death of Michael Jackson and was allowed to keep his medical license.

11. Dr. Murray was ordered by a judge not to administer any heavy anesthetic such as propofol, though the doctor would be able to continue practicing medicine.



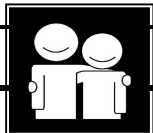
Exercise G: Change the verbs given in the parentheses into the Simple Past tense. State whether the *verb* is regular or irregular:

1. The first decade of the 21st Century ____¹ (see) a series of high-profile criminal cases in which the defendant ____² (be) a bone fide celebrity.
2. Although none of them ____³ (attract) the attention that the first O.J. Simpson trial ____⁴ (do) in the 1990s, each ____⁵ (draw) massive media coverage.
3. The media ____⁶ (have) a field day as the King of Pop Michael Jackson ____⁷ (face) charges of conspiracy to commit child abduction, false imprisonment and extortion, three counts of committing lewd acts upon a child, attempted lewd acts upon a child, and four counts of administering intoxicating agents to assist in the commission of a felony.
4. The legal saga of O.J. Simpson ____⁸ (started) when in 2007 the Las Vegas police ____⁹ (arrest) him on kidnapping and armed robbery charges.
5. The New York media ____¹⁰ (cover) the Martha Stewart case furiously from start to finish. In March, 2004 a jury ____¹¹ (find) domestic diva Martha Stewart guilty of conspiracy, making false statements and obstruction of agency proceedings stemming from a sale of stock in a biotech company.
6. The public ____¹² (be) shocked when in 2001 Robert Blake ____¹³ (face) trial for the murder of B.L. Bakley and soliciting two other men to kill her.
7. A Louisiana jury ____¹⁴ (find) rapper Corey "C-Murder" Miller guilty of second-degree murder for the shooting to death of a 16-year-old fan at a nightclub in 2002.
8. As early as in 1978, the Oscar-winning movie director Roman Polanski ____¹⁵ (plead) guilty to the charges of having sex with a 13-year-old girl in 1977 but then ____¹⁶ (flee) the country before sentencing.
9. Professional basketball star Kobe Bryan never ____¹⁷ (go) to trial, but the

media coverage ____¹⁸ (be) enormous about the alleged charges against him of a sexual assault against a 19-year-old woman at the exclusive spa in Colorado in 2003.

10. Joe Francis once ____¹⁹ (make) millions with his 'Girls Gone Wild' videos and magazines and later ____²⁰ (find) himself entangled in legal trouble in civil and criminal courts on the state and federal levels.

11. The legendary rock & roll music producer Phil Spector ____²¹ (commit) the fatal shooting of Lana Clarkston in 2003 at his Los Angeles mansion.



Have Fun! Lawyer Jokes!

● One day an English grammar teacher was looking ill. A student asked, "What's the matter?" "Tense," answered the teacher, describing how he felt. The student paused and then he continued, "What was the matter? What has been the matter? What might have been the matter...?"

● Little Johnny was having problems in English class, so his teacher, Miss Figpot, decided to stop by Little Johnny's house on her way home. She wanted to discuss Johnny's poor performance directly with his parents. When she rang the door bell, Little Johnny answered. "Hello Johnny, I'd like to talk to your mother or father," she said. "Sorry, but they aren't here," he replied. "Johnny!" She said, "What is it with your grammar?" "Haven't got a clue," Johnny replied, "but dad sure was mad that they had to go to bail her out again!" (Johnny *mistook "grammar" for "grandmother"*)

● A young woman was taking an afternoon nap. After she woke up, she told her husband, "I just dreamt that you gave me a pearl necklace for Valentine's Day. What do you think it means?" "You shall know tonight", he said. That evening, the man came home with a small package and gave it to his wife. Delighted, she opened it. She found a book entitled "The Meaning of Dreams".

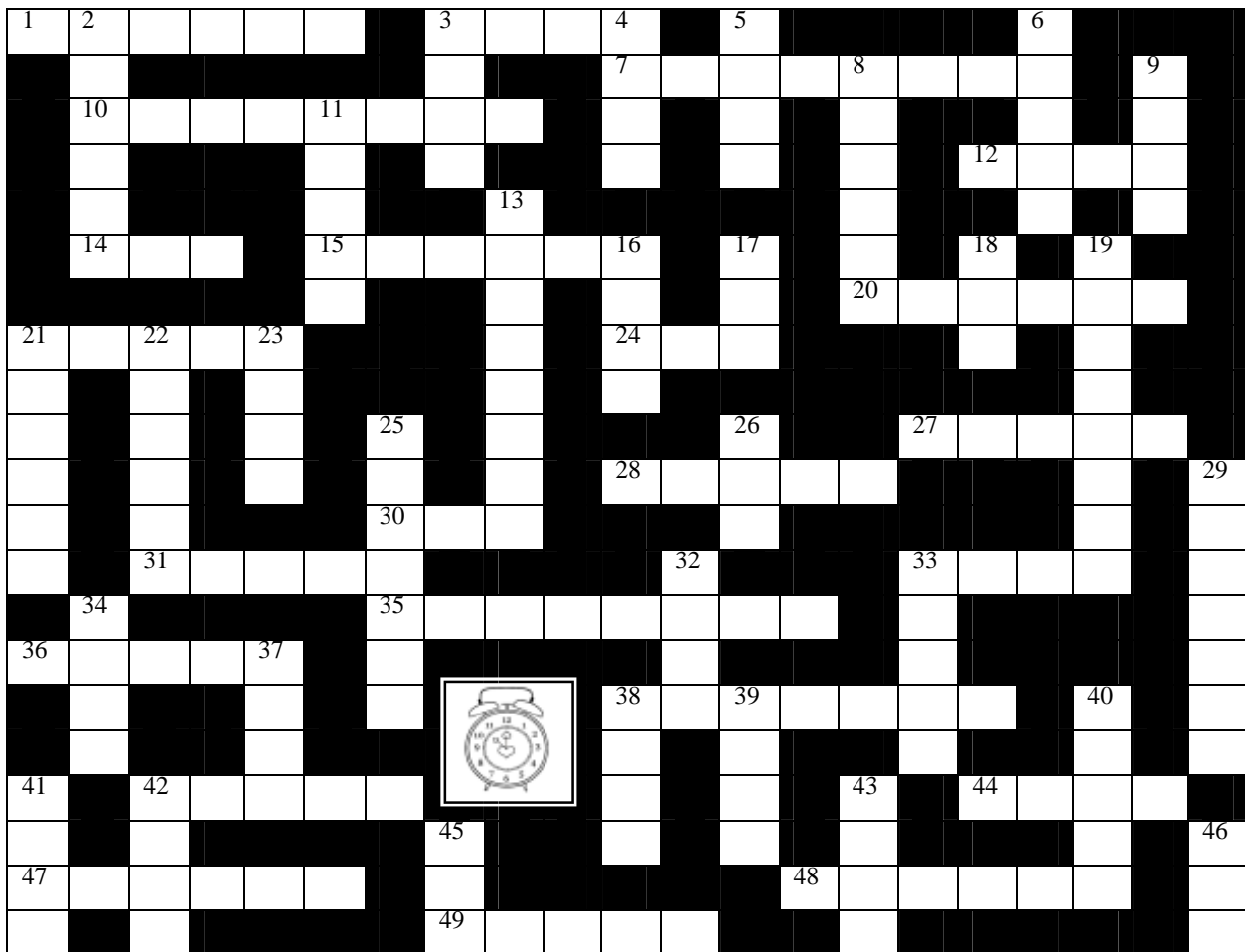
● A visitor to a college paused to admire the new Hemingway Hall that had been built on campus. "It's a pleasure to see a building named for Ernest Hemingway," he said. "Actually," said his guide, "it's named for Joshua Hemingway. No relation." The visitor was astonished. "Was Joshua Hemingway a writer, also?" "Yes, indeed," said his guide. "He wrote a check."

● Q: What is the longest word in the English language?

A: SMILES: there is a mile between the first and last letters!"



Exercise H: Revise your knowledge of irregular verbs with our giant crossword puzzle. Use all verbs in the Simple past tense:



Across: 1- to give moral support; 3- to be priced at; 7- to go too far; 10- to defeat or succeed; 12- to move upward; 14- to excavate; unearth; 15- to hit sharply; 20- to reduce to powder; 21- to propel; reject; 24- to place in; set; 27- to make a promise; 28- to move back & forth; 30- to fix firmly; 31- to be concerned with; 33- to produce tones; 35- to catch up with; 36- to pay out; expend; 38- to wind again; 42- to clear away; 44- to fire a shot; 47- to gain knowledge; 48- to unfold; undo; 49- to twist to squeeze

Down: 2- to establish validity; 3- to arrive; reach; 4- to communicate; 5- to dispatch; 6- to stay/ be upright; 8- to move quickly; 9- to diffuse; 11- to pick out, select; 13- to get a sunburn; 16- to retain possession; 17- to be seated; 18- to achieve victory; 19- loosen the strings; 21- to give instructions; 22- to render verbally; 23- to rouse from sleep; 25- to identify wrongly; 26- to chop; split; divide; 29- to put incorrectly; 32- to have on; 33- to hang loosely; 34- to expel; eject; 37- to pull apart; 38- to produce a sound; 39- to express grief; 40- to change to ice; 41- to deliver for money; 42- to move in water; 43- to travel; proceed; 45- to perceive by sight; 46- to consume food



Exercise J: Find the correct signal word from the box given below to complete the sentences in the Simple Past or Simple Present:

frequently	last week	often	normally
yesterday	in the past several days	before	typically
sometimes	occasionally	rarely	never
last summer	for over 30 years	previously	since 1977
in the old days	the past four years	regularly	most often
always	early this morning	long ago	currently

1. Many people were shocked ____¹ when a Houston jury of six men and six women found Andrea Yates not guilty of murder by reason of insanity.
2. ____² it's so cold that I don't even want to leave the house.
3. The Zodiac Killer was a serial killer whose brutal murders, cryptic letters and haunting phone calls terrorized California residents and challenged investigators ____³.
4. According to the Death Penalty Information Center, women are ____⁴ given the death sentence in the United States.
5. Capital punishment is ____⁵ authorized in 38 states and by the US federal government as well.
6. According to a report from the Bureau of Justice Statistics (BJS), among the 683 executions carried out ____⁶ in the United States, 518 were by lethal injection, 149 by electrocution, 11 by lethal gas, 3 by hanging and 2 by firing squad (both in Utah).
7. The weighing of aggravating and mitigating factors is ____⁷ used in connection with the penalty phase of capital murder cases, when the jury is to decide the life or death of the defendant.
8. Each state ____⁸ has its own laws regarding how jurors are instructed to weigh aggravating and mitigating circumstances.
9. Security workers at MySpace.com removed the profiles of 29,000 convicted sex offenders from its social network Web site, more than four times the number the company ____⁹ reported.
10. It took a Florida jury less than 90 minutes ____¹⁰ to find 25-year-old Tiffany Cole guilty of first-degree murder in the 2005 deaths of a retired couple who were robbed, kidnapped and buried alive in a shallow grave.
11. Hundreds of volunteers searched ____¹¹ for Scoop Daniel after he was reported missing by his co-workers.
12. Not very ____¹² some one invented the assertion that there were only "Four Hundred" people in New York City who were really worth noticing.

(from "The Four Million" by O. Henry)

13. If you ___¹³ receive a letter from Nigeria asking you to send personal or banking information, do not reply in any manner.

14. Letters of credit frauds are ___¹⁴ attempted against banks by providing false documentation to show that goods were shipped when, in fact, no goods or inferior goods were shipped.

15. ___¹⁵ sign blank insurance claim forms to avoid Medicare fraud.

16. Under the sunny skies of southern Florida more than two dozen conspirators spent ___¹⁶ stealing away some \$10 million from 10 banks in the area through all manner of fraud and corruption.

17. The investigation centered on a scam involving small business loans and lines of credit that ___¹⁷ worked more like a typical mortgage fraud scheme.

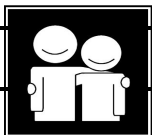
18. ___¹⁸, FBI agents and partner law enforcement officers began arresting nearly 130 members of the Mafia in New York City and other East Coast cities charged in the largest nationally coordinated organized crime takedown in the Bureau's history.

19. The idea for a nationally coordinated LCN (La Cosa Nostra) takedown originated at the Department of Justice ___¹⁹, said Shafer, a veteran organized crime investigator. "We provided big LCN takedowns ___²⁰, but never one this big."

20. "They are ___²¹ involved in gambling and loan sharking, for example, but ___²² the local shoemaker took the betting slips."

21. Using a Trojan horse virus known as Zeus, hackers in Eastern Europe ___²³ infected computers around the world.

22. The hackers ___²⁴ used this information to take over the victims' bank accounts and make unauthorized transfers of thousands of dollars at a time, ___²⁵ routing the funds to other accounts controlled by a network of "money mules."



Have Fun! Lawyer Jokes!

A professor was giving a big test one day to his students. He handed out all of the tests and went back to his desk to wait. Once the test was over, the students all handed the tests back in. The professor noticed that one of the students had attached a \$100 bill to his test with a note saying "A dollar per point." The next class the professor handed the tests back out. This student got back his test and \$56 change.



Exercise K: Match parts of the sentences on your left with their completion on your right to denote the exact intended meaning:



Used to do – We use "used to" for something that happened regularly in the past but no longer happens. E.g.: I used to drive to work but now I take the bus.

– We also use "used to" for something that was true but no longer is. E.g.: I didn't use to like him but – now I do.

To be used to doing – We use "to be used to doing" to say that something is normal, not unusual. E.g.: Hans used to live in England some time ago so he is used to driving on the left now.

To get used to doing – We use "to get used to doing" to talk about the process of something becoming normal for us. E.g.: I didn't understand the accent when I first moved here but I quickly got used to it.

1 st part of the sentence	2 nd part of the sentence
1) It took him a while,	a) when you were a child?
2) I'm new to this job	b) I used to ride my bicycle.
3) The apex court reduced the use of death penalties for most of economic crimes in China,	c) though he never used to like it before.
4) People weren't used to spending much time in Internet just a few years ago,	d) so I'm not used to working with the specialized database software.
5) Tariq Aziz used to be one of the best-known faces of the Iraqi government for more than 20 years,	e) but currently practically every civilized person surfs around like crazy.
6) Juan was in London for a year and though he liked England,	f) until he was used to driving on the left-hand side of the road.
7) Until the hazardous effects of the coca-leaf became a general knowledge in 1929,	g) but these days, English people prefer to go abroad.
8) When they were young,	h) though it used to attract capital punishment for such crimes before.
9) He looked just exhausted yesterday night, but it's only natural	i) but now I realize he's a very nice person.
10) Blackpool in England used to	j) Coca-cola soft drink used to

be the most popular tourist destination,	contain as little as 1/400 grain of cocaine per ounce of its syrup.
11) Mike started drinking coffee recently,	k) so she is used to getting up early.
12) I used to think he was unfriendly	l) but he was recently sentenced to death by the Iraqi High Tribunal.
13) Before I passed my driving test,	m) since he's not used to working so long and so hard!
14) Jane has been working in the office for six years now,	n) he couldn't ever get used to the insipid food and the disgusting coffee and of course, the miserable weather.
15) Did you use to eat a lot of sweets	o) they used to dance until dawn every Saturday night.



Exercise L: Choose the correct variety from the multiple-choice options to complete the sentences given below:

1. I ___¹ jogging three times a week when I lived in Italy. Now, I'm too busy and can only jog once a week.

¹ **a) used to go; b) was used to going; c) got used to going**

2. When she arrived in Britain she ___² on the left, but she soon ___³ it.

² **a) didn't use to drive; b) wasn't used to driving c) didn't get used to driving**

³ **a) used to; b) was used to; c) got used to**

3. They ___⁴ a lot of crazy questions that didn't seem to make any sense, but at the moment we find them only annoying.

⁴ **a) used to ask; b) was used to asking; c) got used to asking**

4. Sally ___⁵ hours in front of the computer every day, though five years ago, she didn't even know about the Internet.

⁵ **a) used to spend; b) was used to spending; got used to spending**

5. Nowadays I usually stay in bed until late, but when I had a job, I ___⁶ early.

⁶ **a) used to get up; b) was used to getting up; c) got used to getting up**

6. I ___⁷ in such a small flat and I found it really hard at first.

⁷ **a) didn't use to live; b) wasn't used to living; c) didn't get used to living**

7. When I lived in Mexico, I ___⁸ tequila at every opportunity.

⁸ **a) used to drink; b) was used to drinking; c) didn't get used to drinking**



It is interesting to know

1. 10% of the world's population speak English as their mother tongue (Chinese 21%, Spanish 6%, Russian 6%, Malay 4%, Hindi 4%, Japanese 3%, Arabic 3%, Portuguese 3%, French 2%, German 2%).

2. There are roughly 6,500 spoken languages in the world today. However, about 2,000 of those languages have fewer than 1,000 speakers. The most widely

spoken language in the world is Mandarin Chinese. There are 885,000,000 people in China that speak that language.

3. The word "Christmas" comes from the Old English, "Cristes maesse" which means "Christ's mass" on which Christians celebrate the birth of Jesus Christ. It is traditionally a celebration of family and children.

4. There are about twenty modern nations whose currency is called the "dollar." The word apparently derives from "taler," which in turn comes from "Joachimsthal," the name of a place in Bohemia where the taler (a silver coin) was created, with the "-thal" part presumably meaning "valley." The modern German spelling, by the way, has been changed to "tal," which explains the new spelling of the English word "Neandertal." So, we use dollars today because certain coins were once minted in a valley.

5. Businesses in European countries commonly use handwriting analysis in their employment practices. In France and Switzerland, approximately 80 percent of the large corporations use graphology in their hiring procedures. Graphology is taught in psychology departments of several leading universities in Germany, France, Switzerland, Holland and Israel.

6. The word "ecology" derives from the Greek words "oikos", loosely translating as "home" and "logie", meaning science or doctrine. The dictionary defines "ecology" as the discipline that studies the relationships between organisms and their environment, i.e., between an organism and its home. In a broader sense, "ecology" deals with the relation between living beings and the planet Earth: our great home, our only home.

7. The word "tourism" developed from the Hebrew word "Tora," which means "to study, learn or search."

8. UNESCO celebrates International Mother Language day on 21st February. Over 100,000 years of human life there have been 130,000 languages spoken. More than half of the world's languages could be extinct by the end of the century and many may not last till 2050.





IV. The Past Continuous (Progressive) Tense

Form = was/ were + present participle

It can be used in positive/ negative/ interrogative. It can be active/ passive.

1. Interrupted Action in the Past – the Past Continuous is used to indicate that a longer action in the past was interrupted by a shorter action in the Simple Past. The interruption can be a real interruption or just an interruption in time.

E.g.: What were you doing when the earthquake started?

2. Specific Time as an Interruption – the Past Continuous is used to describe a specific time as an interruption. In the Simple Past, a specific time is used to show when an action began or finished, in the Past Continuous, a specific time only interrupts the action.

E.g.: At midnight, we were still driving through the desert.

3. Parallel Actions – the Past Continuous is used with two actions in the same sentence, it expresses the idea that both actions were happening at the same time. The actions are parallel.

E.g.: I wasn't paying attention while I was writing the letter, so I made several mistakes.

4. Atmosphere – in English, we often use a series of parallel actions to describe the atmosphere at a particular time in the past.

E.g.: When I walked into the office, several people were busily typing, some were talking on the phones, the boss was yelling directions, and customers were waiting to be helped.

5. Repetition and Irritation with "Always" – the Past Continuous is used with words such as "*always*" or "*constantly*" expresses the idea that something irritating or shocking often happened in the past. The concept is very similar to the expression "used to" but with negative emotion. Remember to put the words "always" or "constantly" between "be" and "verb + ing." E.g.: He was constantly talking. He annoyed everyone.

6. While vs. When – "When" is most often followed by the Simple Past tense, whereas "while" is usually followed by Past Continuous. "While" expresses the idea of "during that time." The examples below have similar meanings, but they emphasize different parts of the sentence:

E.g.: While I was studying, she called.

E.g.: I was studying when she called.



Your Training Exercises



Exercise A: Fill in the spaces in the sentences with the phrases from the yellow box. Comment your choice:

a) was looking the other way	k) my wife arrived home
b) while I was having a bath	l) when it stopped working
c) when the accident happened	m) when the police stopped me
d) when we were cut off	n) as the big game was starting
e) it was snowing	o) when the dog attacked him
f) another driver drove past very quickly	p) a car turned into my path
g) the workers were repairing it	q) I saw an accident happen
h) I arrived home and tried to calm her down	r) I was driving too fast
i) I was trying to download new software	s) I was feeding it
j) it started to rain heavily	t) the power went off

1. Tim was driving his car too quickly _____
2. _____ as I was preparing her dinner for her.
3. I was riding my bicycle on the pavement _____
4. The boy was delivering newspapers _____
5. _____ during the match and that made playing very difficult.
6. My sister was using the computer _____
7. The power went off in the house just _____
8. Unfortunately, the phone rang _____
9. I was speaking to my brother on the phone _____
10. The thief escaped while the policeman _____
11. When the accident happened _____
12. I was driving near my house when _____
13. She was singing her last song when _____
14. The ceiling fell down while _____
15. My team was losing the match when _____
16. I fell off my bike when _____
17. While the police officer was talking to me _____
18. The bird attacked me while _____
19. The computer exploded while _____
20. My sister was crying when _____



Exercise B: Have a look at the interview between Mr. Jones and the police officer. Choose the best past simple and past continuous question that you need to ask for information. Give your answers:

Policeman: OK, Mr. Jones. Now just tell us what happened last night and what you were doing between 7 o'clock and 10 o'clock.

(1) Choose: Where were you at 7 o'clock?

Where did you stay at 7 o'clock?

Mr. Jones: Well, at 7 o'clock I _____ (1) and I was watching a movie called "Last Chance in Bandit County."

Policeman: (2) Choose: Who was you sitting next to?

Who were you sitting next to?

Mr. Jones: I _____ (2) who was wearing a yellow dress.

Policeman: (3) Choose: What she did?

What did she do?

What did she do?

Mr. Jones: Just after the film started, she _____ (3) so I'm sure she will remember me.

Policeman: (4) Choose: What hour did you leave the cinema?

Which time you left the cinema?

What time did you leave the cinema?

Mr. Jones: The movie finished at about 7.30 pm, so I _____ (4) later.

Policeman: Why?

Mr. Jones: Because I was seeing what films were on for the next week.

Policeman: (5) Choose: What was the weather like?

What was the weather?

How the weather was?



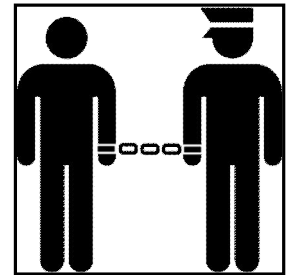
Mr. Jones: Anyway, when I got outside into the street, it _____ (5) and so I decided to go to a bar. As I was walking to the bar a friend telephoned me on my mobile phone so I stood in a shop doorway to speak to him for a short time.

Policeman: (6) Choose: What shop was it?

What type of shop it was?

What type of shop was it?

Mr. Jones: Oh, I think _____ (6) shop. It was called Travers or Trovers or something ... I went into the bar at about ten to eight.



Policeman: (7) Choose: What did the customers were doing?
What did the customers do?
What were the customers doing?

Mr. Jones: As I walked in, there were only 2 customers there and they _____ (7). The bartender was watching television too!

Policeman: (8) Choose: Where did you sit?



Where were you sitting?

Where did you sitting?

Mr. Jones: I ordered a pint of beer and _____ near _____ (8).

Policeman: So will these three people remember you being there?

Mr. Jones: Oh yes, I hope so. As I was drinking my beer, the bartender was talking to me about the weather and the soccer match on Saturday.

Policeman: (9) Choose: What hour did you leave the pub?

What time you left the pub?

What time did you leave the pub?

Mr. Jones: I _____ (9) and went to look for my car. When I arrived at the parking lot, there were two teenagers leaning on my car talking so I shouted at them to get them off. They might be remembering me too!

Policeman: (10) Choose: What time did you get home?

What time you did get home?

Mr. Jones: I drove home while listening to the radio and _____ at about _____ (10).

Policeman: Who did you see at home?

Mr. Jones: My wife... my sons...

Policeman: (11) Choose: What your sons were doing?

What were your sons doing?

What did your sons doing?

Mr. Jones: When I arrived home, my wife was cooking dinner and my two sons _____ (11) in the living room. We all ate dinner together and that finished at about 10 o'clock. Well... excuse me, officer, why are you asking me all these questions? What's happened? What's the matter? Now I really must call my lawyer.

Write down the story in accordance with the given facts and also let your imagination run away! Fancy what could have happen to Mr. Jones or anyone from his family? Why was he interviewed? What was the matter?

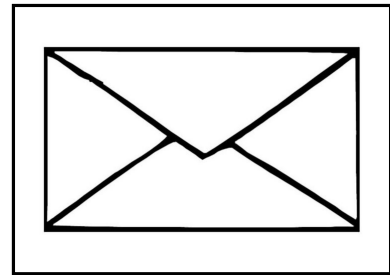


Exercise C: Put the verbs given in the parentheses into the correct verb forms to complete the sentences of the following letter:

Dear Jimmy,

Thank you so much for your kind letter! I really ___¹ (enjoy) reading about your holidays in Spain.

It ___² (sound) like you ___³ (have) a wonderful vacation. Let me also tell you about my summer



holidays, in Greece this time! The trip originally ___⁴ (start) smoothly, so

___⁵ (be) the flight to Greece. However, we incidentally ___⁶ (have) unexpected problems with the ferry boat transit in Athens. We had booked a

ferry service two weeks before we ___⁷ (leave) London and, as a result, we merrily ___⁸ (arrive) at the sea port with the tickets in our hands.

Unfortunately, there ___ (not wait) any ferry boat ___⁹ for us! We ___¹⁰ (rushed) around the sea port while we ___¹¹ (try) to find a particular ship

with a particular name, but no one had hardly ever heard about the ferry transits there at all! Finally, we ___¹² (meet) an old man who ___¹³ (tell) us

that since June, 2008 the ferry lines ___¹⁴ (have) new owners and all their boats ___¹⁵ (get) new names as well. The one we ___¹⁶ (look for) had also

changed its name. The man kindly ___¹⁷ (direct) us to the appropriate gateway. Well, we were lucky as the ferry ___¹⁸ (prepare) to depart right at

that very moment! We ___¹⁹ (hop) on board pretty fast and ___²⁰ (rush) to a buffet for some drinks. We ___²¹ (be) just thirsty and besides we ___²²

(decide) to have some beer to calm down our nerves, though I usually ___²³ (not drink) any alcohol as you might know. After that, our vacation ___²⁴

(turn) to be a real fun. We ___²⁵ (arrive) in Sifnos. Sifnos ___²⁶ (be) one of the marvelous Greek islands. There we ___²⁷ (find) our apartment. The

apartment ___²⁸ (be located) directly on the beach with a tremendous sea view. We ___²⁹ (stay) in a small village. Normally it ___³⁰ (have) about 200

inhabitants during the year, but it ___³¹ (swell) to over 2,000 during the summer season months. How ___ we ___³² (spend) our days? We ___³³

(read), ___³⁴ (swim), ___³⁵ (nap), so we ___³⁶ (have) a pretty relaxing time indeed. We also ___³⁷ (take) long walks around the island sometimes, while

we ___³⁸ (stay) there.

I will always remember one walk in particular: We ___³⁹ (wake up) quite early that day since we ___⁴⁰ (plan) to get an early start. I ___⁴¹ (make) my

coffee when my brother-in-law, who had joined us in Sifnos, ___⁴² (say), that Susan, my sister, ___⁴³ (feel) sick so we ___⁴⁴ (have) to call or find a

doctor. We ____⁴⁵ (get into) the car and, after a short journey up the road, we ____⁴⁶ (find) the nearest doctor's office, where Susan ____⁴⁷ (get) the medical aid she ____⁴⁸ (need). We ____⁴⁹ (come) back to our apartment and Susan ____⁵⁰ (go) to bed for the day. Darien, my brother-in-law, and I ____⁵¹ (decide) to go on a hike due to our previous plans. A slight breeze ____⁵² (blow) so we really ____⁵³ (not notice) the heat. While we ____⁵⁴ (walk) for about an hour, the wind suddenly ____⁵⁵ (stop) and we ____⁵⁶ (find) ourselves alone in the heat in the unknown countryside without a drop of water. We ____⁵⁷ (decide) to keep walking until we ____⁵⁸ (will) find some shelter to stop in, so as to have a drink and rest. Unfortunately, the sun ____ just ____⁵⁹ (boil) us and we ____⁶⁰ (can) hardly breathe by the time we ____⁶¹ (see) a tempting bar. While we ____⁶² (approach) it, I ____⁶³ (think), I ____⁶⁴ (will) have given my life for a drink of water! O.k., the rest of our trip ____⁶⁵ (be) much better.

I ____⁶⁶ (hope) to hear from you soon. ____⁶⁷ (give) my hugs to Barbara.
Yours, Lucy.



Exercise D: Put the verbs in brackets into the gaps and form the sentences in the Past Simple or Continuous. Comment the usage:

- 1) I ____¹ (talk) to my lawyer, when he ____² (get) an urgent call from the local police department. His client ____³ (escape) from prison yesterday!
- 2) At midnight, he ____ still ____⁴ (prepare) the brief on his client's case.
- 3) The boys ____ constantly ____⁵ (talk), so I ____⁶ (can) hardly understand the plot of the movie. I guess, they ____⁷ (annoy) everyone.
- 4) When I ____⁸ (walk) into the police station, several officers ____⁹ busily ____ on the phones, while customers ____¹⁰ (wait) to be helped.
- 5) What ____ you ____¹¹ when the fire ____¹² (start)?
- 6) My brother ____¹³ (drive) too fast when the accident ____¹⁴ (happen).
- 7) You ____¹⁵ (take) these precious photos with your new camera, weren't you? How much ____ it ____¹⁶ (cost)?
- 8) She ____¹⁷ (gain) much of her knowledge and experience while she ____¹⁸ (work) in the procurator's office.



"Why didn't you arrest him when you took his photograph?"



Exercise E: Put the two halves of the sentences together by joining the numbers and the letters. Mind the *be going to*:



The structure *be going to* is normally used to indicate the future in English. When *be going to* is used *in the past tense*, it refers to something that was going to happen but in the end it did not happen. Moreover, it can be used to make predictions about the future made in the past.

1st part of the sentence	2nd part of the sentence
1. I was going to sell my car,	a) but then I remembered they could speak English well.
2. I was going to call you yesterday,	b) but I failed to pass 200 questions the Multistate Bar Examination (MBE) contains.
3. I was going to borrow some money for payment to a merchant,	c) but then she decided to come to Britain herself.
4. I was going to quit my job,	d) but then I realized it was too difficult and time-consuming.
5. I was going to buy a new laptop with the preinstalled Windows 7 OS,	e) but there was a strike of bus drivers throughout the country.
6. I was going to visit my aunt in New Zealand,	f) but I didn't have the US Social Security number.
7. I was going to take a bus for commuting to work for a change,	g) but then I saw the price of it...
8. I was going to watch the late TV show last night,	h) that the vacation was going to be a disaster.
9. I was going to learn to play piano,	i) but then I heard about the coming extended recession.
10. I was going to provide negotiations with our partners in Italian,	j) but then I fell asleep just in my living room.
11. I was going to practice law in Delaware with Morris Nichols & LLP,	k) but I found with regret that my credit card was stolen.
12. Jane said Sam was going to bring his boss with him,	l) Sally was going to make a really memorable speech.
13. I had a feeling,	m) but he came alone.
14. I thought,	n) but I lost your phone number.
15. I was going to apply for the California Bar Examination,	o) but no-one wanted to buy it.



Exercise F: Try to collect twisted parts of the sentences below to form meaningful affirmative, negative or interrogative sentences:

1. the/ you/ doing/ What/ occurred/ were/ when/ accident? _____

2. robbers/ were/ the/ the/ The/ just/ leaving/ police/ arrived/ as/ bank. _____

3. accident/ dreadful/ home/ last/ While I/ I/ a/ back/ night/ car/ was/ saw/ going. _____

4. car/ was/ lane/ when/ The/ the/ the/ fire/ fire/ racing/ truck/ to/ of/ a/ scene/ Mazda/ cut/ its/ into. _____

5. road/ I/ lawyer/ walking/ was/ met/ down the/ when/ I/ my. _____

6. lawyer/ decided/ The/ to/ agreement/ preparing/ a/ change/ draft/ the/ the/ parties/ contract/ a/ to/ and/ terms/ was/ when/ modify/ original/ transaction/ just/ of/ their. _____

7. taking/ the/ She/ away/ was/ was/ husband/ crying/ while/ her / police. _____

8. when/ fast/ police/ too/ the/ Alex/ was/ wasn't/ he/ by/ stopped/ driving/ yesterday/. _____

9. budget/ electives/ was/ students/ until/ The/ law/ reduced/ in/ faculty/ foreign/ was/ languages/ organizing/ the/ for/ their. _____

10. though/ He/ he/ was/ was from/ under/ shops/ driving/ and/ dangerously/ community/ still/ his/ stealing/ supervision/ car/. _____

11. getting/ He/ he/ bus/ was/ a/ when/ a/ wallet/ the/ found/ side/ of/walk/ on. _____

12. new/ her/ last/ some one / While/ Mary/ sleeping/ night/ brand/ stole/ Mazda/ was/ car. _____

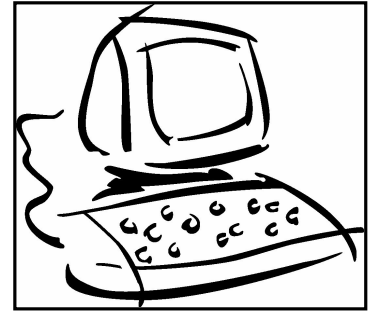
13. When/ writing/ suddenly/ off/ I was an/ the/ important/ shut/ e-mail/ computer. _____

14. of/ to/ ran/ work/ out/ he/ when/ George driving/ was/ gas. _____



Exercise G: Complete the sentences in Past Progressive or Past Simple. Underline the signal words which color the tense usage:

1. Yesterday at six, John ___¹ (drive) to the airport.
2. While Claire ___² (have) her lunch in the canteen, Mary and Will ___³ (talk) to a customer.
3. I ___⁴ (prepare) the invoice, when my computer suddenly ___⁵ (crash).
4. When we ___⁶ (sit) in the meeting room, Joseph suddenly ___⁷ (get) a series of hiccups.
5. I ___⁸ (not/gossip) with Amy when you came in, we ___⁹ (discuss) a really serious problem.
6. Bob ___¹⁰ (walk) to the office when it suddenly ___¹¹ (start) to rain.
7. During the week of the conference, I ___¹² (stay) at a nice B&B hotel.
8. Where ___¹³ (you/ stay) during your last visit to London?
9. Who ___¹⁴ (do) my job while I was in the hospital?
10. When I ___¹⁵ (get) up yesterday, the sun ___¹⁶ (shine).
11. While it ___¹⁷ (rain) outside, I ___¹⁸ (sit) in my lawyer's office. But after a while, the sun ___¹⁹ (come) out again.
12. They ___²⁰ (wait) at the station for 90 minutes when the train finally ___²¹ (arrive).
13. Frank Sinatra once ___²² (catch) the flu because he ___²³ (sing) in the rain.
14. He ___²⁴ (drive) less than an hour when he ___²⁵ (run) out of petrol.
15. I ___²⁶ (not/ work) all day; so I ___²⁷ (not/ be) tired and ___²⁸ (go) to the disco at night.
16. The police ___²⁹ (discover) that a criminal gang ___³⁰ (buy) luxury cars with stolen credit cards and ___³¹ (organize) an incredible operation to stop them.
17. While Claire ___³² (prepare) her presentation, her mobile suddenly ___³³ (ring).
18. I ___³⁴ (not/ pay) attention to the spelling of words while I ___³⁵ (write) the letter, so I ___³⁶ (make) several mistakes.
19. While the Browns ___³⁷ (dine) out last night someone ___³⁸ (break) into their villa and ___³⁹ (steal) all jewelry and a sum of money.
20. When I ___⁴⁰ (walk) into the supermarket, one customer ___⁴¹ (yell) at a shop assistant and ___⁴² (wave) his hands, while others ___⁴³ (complain) to each other about the bad service.





Exercise H: Put *yes/no* and *Wh* questions to the sentences given below. Mind the word order and the Past continuous/simple tenses:

1. A professional athlete was climbing a 200-year old oak tree in the middle of the forest during his training workout when one of the branches broke and he fell 50 feet to the ground.

YN _____

WH _____



2. My neighbors were watching an old and faulty television set when it suddenly exploded and showered them with fragments of glass.

YN _____

WH _____

3. I was driving my old pimped car when a policeman stopped me because he thought that I was speeding.

YN _____

WH _____

4. A blind man was withdrawing money from his bank's cash dispenser when three masked gunmen attacked him and stole his wallet.

YN _____

WH _____

5. I was walking down the road, nonchalantly whistling when a mad dog bit me.

YN _____

WH _____

6. The police arrested her while she was watching the fireworks display. This woman set fire to a fireworks factory.

YN _____

WH _____

7. Mrs. Groove took wallets out of pockets and handbags in a busy street, while a police officer was watching her. He asked her to open up her handbag and he found twenty wallets.

YN _____

WH _____

8. The hijack pointed a gun at the pilots of a plane and told them to take him to Bogotá while the plane was already going to Bogotá.

YN _____

WH _____



Exercise I: Read the sentences describing illegal behavior of different people. All of them were caught at the scene of the crime during the commission of some misdeed. What was their crime? Choose an appropriate answer from the box of words below:

armed robbery	arson	blackmail	forgery	hijacking
hooliganism	murder	kidnapping	pickpocketing	smuggling
embezzlement	fraud	theft	vandalism	burglary



Story 1: One man threatened to tell his friend's wife that he was having an affair unless he gave him a lot of money. Unfortunately for him, his friend's wife already knew the truth and his friend told the police. _____

Story 2: One strange man was arrested while he was bringing gold bars into the country. The customs officials got suspicious when his trousers made a clanging noise as he walked. _____



Story 3: One man was planning to steal jewelers from a shop, when his mobile phone rang. He was inside the shop and he answered the call so as giving his own name. _____

Story 4: One man was drinking at a soccer match. He behaved himself just disgracefully and at the end attacked someone. Unfortunately the person he was fighting with turned out to be a champion boxer. _____



Story 5: One man tried to abduct a millionaire's son while he was asking money from his father for ransom. He got the boy in his car, but fortunately the car wouldn't start, until the police came. _____

Story 6: One man was smashing up parked cars and painting graffiti all over them at the parking lot. Unfortunately one of the cars was a police car and the graffiti he painted was his own name. _____



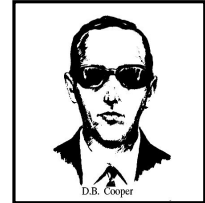
Story 7: One man went into a bank with a gun. He stole \$20,000. Unfortunately, he tripped as he was going down the steps. The money fell all over the street and his gun went down a drain. _____

Story 8: One man was working hard to make his own bank notes. Though they looked very realistic, but he couldn't write without mistakes, so the notes read: "Twenty pounds". _____



Story 9: One man poisoned his rich uncle because he has always dreamt to inherit all his money. When a detective went to the scene of the crime to investigate he found a bottle of poison with the nephew's fingerprints. _____

Story 10: One man was intentionally setting fire to his neighbor's dwelling so as to destroy it. The fire was of such intensity that the arsonist's house was completely burnt out until the firefighters came. _____



Story 11: One man was picking wallets out of pockets in a busy street when he was stopped by a police officer for stop and search. The police officer was surprised when he found at least dozen of wallets with the credit cards belonging to other people. In fact, the guy was mistakenly stopped since he

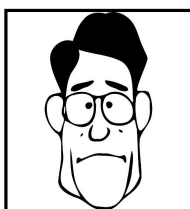
looked like another offender wanted by police. _____

Story 12: One man was breaking and entering the house of another in the night time with intent to commit a felony. He was a computer games fan. When he saw the switched computer with the loaded game on, he couldn't fight temptation to play a little bit. He was playing and playing when he finally got asleep right at the keyboard. He was still sleeping when the police came. _____



Story 13: One man pointed a gun at the pilots of a plane and told them to take him to Pakistan. The plane was already going to Pakistan. _____

Story 14: One man was dishonestly appropriating and secreting assets of his company. The problem was that he always typed his own corporate password while he was getting access to financial database. _____



Story 15: One man was selling merchandise from a closing store. All items were already marked-down on clearance, but our entrepreneur was doubling the price (quadrupling it for a 100%-off price), and then "discounting" it from there. _____



Exercise J: Put the verbs in brackets into the Past continuous tense. Comment the reasons for the particular tense usage:

1. The police arrested the murderer while he ___¹ (attack) an old woman.
2. My uncle lost all his fortune because he ___ always ___² (play) in casinos.
3. Last night when I left the party two gangs ___³ (fight) near the bar.
4. When the professor entered the classroom the students ___⁴ (speak) very loudly and didn't pay any attention to him.
5. Last night when the thieves broke into my neighbor's house he ___⁵ (sleep).
6. This morning the dog attacked the postman when he ___⁶ (deliver) the mail.
7. This morning while it ___⁷ (storm) they broadcasted that the private jet-plane crashed into the mountains due to the terrible weather conditions.
8. The plane crashed due to the mysterious circumstances while it ___⁸ (land).
9. When the war began, they ___⁹ (live) in Austria, but then they moved to the USA.
10. I ___¹⁰ (listen) to the radio when I heard the shocking news about the hurricane which ___¹¹ (approach) the area we lived in.
11. We had an incidental flat tire while we ___¹² (drive) to Ankara.
12. The insurance agent came just as I ___¹³ (leave) home.
13. The policeman ___¹⁴ (direct) the traffic when the accident happened.
14. The notorious hacker ___¹⁵ (try) to gain an unauthorized access to the financial database of the commercial bank when the newly installed security system detected and blocked his offensive attempts.
15. The secretary ___¹⁶ (answer) the telephone, when her boss announced about their company's bankruptcy.
16. The legislators ___¹⁷ (propose) amendments to the draft bill after the Committee debate, because they ___¹⁸ (plan) to reach agreement within the parliamentary session.
17. We scrapped the project because funds ___¹⁹ (run) out.
18. We were forced to withdraw the model as the customers ___ constantly ___²⁰ (complain) about the faults it had.
19. I ___²¹ (drive) along a lonely highway when suddenly a man jumped out of the wood.
20. When I worked for the computer company, they ___ always ___²² (promote) new ideas and projects on the market to meet the needs of the

rapidly developing computer software industry.

21. Tim ____²³ (snowboard) somewhere in Austria when he broke his leg.

22. Yesterday at this time, I ____²⁴ (sit) at my desk at work, when a stranger came in and started posing threats for no reason.

23. A burglar broke into Mr. and Mrs. Carlson's mansion last Sunday night, while they ____²⁵ (entertain) their guests. Everybody ____²⁶ (dance), some people ____²⁷ (have) drinks, while the others ____²⁸ (talk) loudly.

24. Because he ____²⁹ (carry) a gun during the crime, it was considered an armed robbery.

25. The suspect tried to tell them the truth during the interrogation but they ____³⁰ (not/ listen) to his confession.



It is interesting to know

<http://www.whitesmoke.com/verbs-grammatical-categories>

1. A verb is often defined as a word which shows *action* or *state of being*. The verb is the heart of a sentence – every sentence must have a verb. Recognizing the verb is often the most important step in understanding the meaning of a sentence.

2. Unlike most of the other parts of speech, verbs change their form. As there are relatively many English verb tenses, verbs in English come in many forms that provide different shades of meaning.

3. In English there only one verb ending remained, for verbs in the third person singular in the Present Simple tense: E.g.: Dan cooks dinner for us 3 times a week.

Categories	Type	Examples
Person	1st person// 2nd person// 3rd person	I go// You go She/ he goes
Number	Singular// Plural	He has written// They have written
Tense	Present// past// future	I eat// I ate// I will eat
Aspect	Simple// progressive perfect perfect-progressive	I study every day. I am studying today. I have studied for years. I have been studying for hours.
Mood	indicative imperative subjunctive	I am always on time. Be there on time! If I were on time, I would...
Voice	Active Passive	Everybody drinks water. Water is drunk by everybody.



Your Self - Assessment Test: Past Simple// Past Continuous

◆ **Exercise 1.** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form – the Past Simple or the Past Continuous. Comment the tense usage:

1. The man ___¹ (leave) the shop when the policeman ___² (stop) him.
2. When the traffic lights ___³ (switch), I ___⁴ (realize) to my surprise that the car in front of me ___⁵ (not/ move).
3. How fast he ___⁶ (drive) when the accident ___⁷ (happen)?
4. Robin Hood ___⁸ (be) a character who ___⁹ (steal) from the rich and ___¹⁰ (give) to the poor.
5. George ___¹¹ (fall) off the ladder in his office while he ___¹² (paint) the ceiling.
6. We ___¹³ (see) an accident at the junction of Broadway and Seventh Avenue when we ___¹⁴ (wait) for the bus.
7. The old Chevy car ___¹⁵ (make) strange noises all the way home.
8. Fortunately, they ___¹⁶ (visit) Sydney when they ___¹⁷ (travel) in Australia.
9. I ___¹⁸ (walk) home, ___¹⁹ (whistle) happily, when I ___²⁰ two masked men as they ___²¹ (run out) of the bank.
10. When I ___²² (walk) into the busy office, the secretary ___²³ (talk) loudly on the phone with one of their customers, several clerks ___ busily ___²⁴ (work) at their desks, and two managers ___ quietly ___²⁵ (discuss) some methods to improve the customer service.
11. Sharon ___²⁶ (be) in the living-room when John ___²⁷ (tell) me what ___²⁸ (happen), but she ___²⁹ (not/ reply) anything because she ___³⁰ (not/ listen).
12. When I ___³¹ (enter) the oriental bazaar, a couple of merchants ___ busily ___³² (bargain), as they ___³³ (try) to sell their goods to naive tourists, who ___³⁴ (hunt) for souvenirs.
13. Joyce ___ always ___³⁵ (talk) about herself too enthusiastically as she ___³⁶ (be) a very self-centered person.
14. While the police ___³⁷ (look) for the murderer, he ___³⁸ (leave) the country with a false passport.
15. The robber quickly ___³⁹ (pick up) the cash, ___⁴⁰ (run) to the door and ___⁴¹ (rush) out onto the street.
16. When I ___⁴² (see) you in the street that day, my heart ___⁴³ (go) wild, I

- ___⁴⁴ (try) to find the words to say, when you ___⁴⁵ (turn) and ___⁴⁶ (smile).
17. My car incidentally ___⁴⁷ (break) down when I ___⁴⁸ (drive) to work during the rush hour.
18. The night ___⁴⁹ (be) beautiful and the stars ___⁵⁰ (shine) in the cloudless sky. We ___⁵¹ (walk) in the park when a heavy thunderstorm suddenly ___⁵² (break out).
19. The thief ___⁵³ (sneak) into the house, ___⁵⁴ (steal) the jewels and ___⁵⁵ (leave) without a trace. The offender ___⁵⁶ (manage) to sneak in through the back door while the hostess ___⁵⁷ (not/ look).
20. I actually ___⁵⁸ (want) to call you, but by accident I ___⁵⁹ (dial) William's number. He ___⁶⁰ (not/ do) anything special at that moment and really ___⁶¹ (like) the idea of playing squash with us.
21. Two days ago, a murder ___⁶² (happen) in Market Street at about seven p.m. Yes, it ___⁶³ (be) seven o'clock, since the chapel clock ___⁶⁴ (strike) exactly seven times and besides I ___⁶⁵ (hear) that two people ___⁶⁶ (argue) loudly in the hallway at roughly that period of time.
22. In 1841 the settlers in the Clark valley ___⁶⁷ (address) a petition to the United States Congress and ___⁶⁸ (put) emphasis on their need for protection against crime, as well as their growing apprehension that Indians in Eastern and Southern Oregon ___⁶⁹ (become) hostile toward the settlers.
23. While the jury ___⁷⁰ (deliberate) the fate of a man charged with murder in a drunken-driving collision, the defendant who ___⁷¹ (be) out on bail, ___⁷² (go) home to await the word on the decision.
24. Ann ___⁷² (complain) constantly of being lonely, but she ___⁷³ (not/ try) to change anything in her life for better.
25. Before you ___⁷⁴ (telephone), I ___⁷⁵ (watch) television.

◆ **Exercise 2.** Choose a variety of "used to", "be used to" or "get used to". Use the verb in brackets to make the sentence:

1. European drivers find it difficult to ___¹ (drive) on the left when they visit Britain.
2. Do you see that building there? I ___² (go) to the Law school there, but now it's a factory.
3. I've only been at this company a couple of months, but I ___³ (still not) how they do things round here.
4. When I first arrived in this neighborhood, I ___⁴ (live) in a house. I had always lived in apartment buildings.

5. Working till 10 pm isn't a problem. I ___⁵ (finish) late. I did it in my last job too.
6. I can't believe they are going to build an airport just two miles from our new house! I will ___⁶ (never) all that noise! What a nightmare.
7. His father ___⁷ (smoke) twenty cigars a day – now he doesn't smoke at all!
8. Whenever all my friends went to discos, I ___⁸ (never go) with them, but now I enjoy it.
9. I ___⁹ (drive) as I have had my driving license almost a year now.
10. When Max went to live in Italy, he ___¹⁰ (live) there very quickly. He's a very open minded person.

◆ **Exercise 3.** Examine the sentences given below. Underline the verb forms and comment the tense forms used. Put the given sentences into the Interrogative (*yes/ no* and *Wh* questions) form:

1. The professor called me by name while I was stealthily talking on my mobile phone, so I did not hear him. _____
 YN _____
 WH _____
2. When the earthquake destroyed their house, the Claytons were shopping in the downtown. Luckily, they were not sleeping or watching TV at home. _____
 YN _____
 WH _____
3. As soon as I saw the burglar breaking into my neighbor's house, I called the police. _____
 YN _____
 WH _____
4. When the taxi arrived I was still packing my things. _____
 YN _____
 WH _____
5. This morning was really beautiful. The sun was shining, the birds were singing, and everyone in the street was smiling and saying hello to each other. _____
 YN _____
 WH _____
6. While he was speaking to the sheriff I was waiting for him. _____

YN _____

WH _____

7. She promised not to report me to the police but ten minutes later I saw that she was talking with a policeman and from the expression on his face I understood that she was telling him about me. _____

YN _____

WH _____

8. The US immigration lawyer's waiting room was full of people. Some were reading magazines; others were just turning over the pages. Everybody was waiting for the secretary to say "Next, please". _____

YN _____

WH _____

9. Mr. Ruminant was interacting with the immigration lawyer for some time yesterday because he wanted to clear up the details of such a difficult aspect of immigration law as obtaining permanent resident status. _____

YN _____

WH _____

10. Mr. Ruminant was informed that due to a prevalence of people who were marrying US residents fraudulently for the purposes of obtaining permanent resident status, those marriages were often scrutinized by the USCIS to ensure that they were genuine. _____

YN _____

WH _____

◆ **Exercise 4.** Use narrative tenses, particularly, Past simple and past continuous for your further practice. Write a short newspaper article about a robbery in a public place. Create your own content of the story and use the given questions only as the focus for creating your own ideas:

1. First, look for the definition of the term *robbery* in your legal glossary or dictionary. What is robbery? What is armed robbery? What is robbery committed with violence?

2. Then think about the plot of the story. Where was the robbery committed? What kind of public place was it?

3. When did the robbery take place? Was it an ordinary day of the week? Was it morning, day-time, or late at night? Was it on holiday? Was it on a weekend?

4. How many robbers were there? Were they males or females?

◆ **Exercise 5.** Fill in the gaps with the correct form of verb in brackets. Mind that most of the verbs are irregular – only a few are regular:

Last year I ___¹ (fly) to Greece to visit my sister who ___² (use) to live on a beautiful seashore island. The flight ___³ (take) roughly three hours but it only ___⁴ (cost) me twenty pounds as it ___⁵ (be) a special deal on the Internet. My sister ___⁶ (meet) me at the airport and we ___⁷ (drive) to her house on the beach. Every day we ___⁸ (sunbathe) and ___⁹ (swim) on the beautiful deserted beach. We ___¹⁰ (spend) the evenings chatting in her garden while we ___¹¹ (eat) seafood and ___¹² (drink) the delicious local white wine. One day I ___¹³ (swim) out to a small island. When I ___¹⁴ (come) back to the beach I ___¹⁵ (feel) tired so I ___¹⁶ (go) to sleep. Once, while I ___¹⁷ (be) half asleep I ___¹⁸ (think) I ___¹⁹ (hear) someone ___²⁰ (move) nearby but I ___²¹ (can't) see anyone. When I ___²² (wake) up an hour later I ___²³ (can't) find my clothes anywhere. Someone had stolen them! My watch ___²⁴ (be gone) too, and so ___²⁵ (be) my purse. But luckily I ___²⁶ (bring) only a few dollars with me for drinks and snacks so I ___²⁷ (don't) lose much. I ___²⁸ (run) to the village, which fortunately ___²⁹ (be) just up the road, and ___³⁰ (buy) a towel at a beach shop to dry myself. Then I ___³¹ (go) back to my sister's house. The experience ___³² (teach) me one more time that people ___³³ (shall) take care of themselves and their things too! Even desert beaches ___³⁴ (can) be teemed with thieves!

◆ **Exercise 6.** Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verb in brackets. You can choose from the past simple and past continuous:

This ___¹ (happen) about five years ago. I ___² (come) back home from Turkey where I ___³ (be) on holidays with some of my friends. We ___⁴ (rent) a bungalow together in the mountains not far from Ankara. Anyway, we ___⁵ (sit) on the plane and ___⁶ (just / take) off when there ___⁷ (be) a loud bang from the right hand side of the plane and I ___⁸ (can) see a lot of smoke coming from one of the engines. Of course, everyone ___⁹ (start) looking around in panic but the plane ___¹⁰ (fly) normally. But then a few minutes later the pilot ___¹¹ (come) into the saloon and ___¹² (say) that there ___¹³ (be) a problem with one of the engines so we ___¹⁴ (return) to the airport. I ___¹⁵ (feel) pretty nervous, but I ___¹⁶ (try) to concentrate on my book and ten minutes later we ___¹⁷ (land) without any problems. We ___¹⁸ (have) to wait for about an hour, and then we ___¹⁹ (get) back on the plane.



◆ **Exercise 1.** Put the verbs in brackets into *the past simple tense* to complete the following sentences:

Thomas ___¹ (live) in the small town of Brighton. Thomas ___² (love) walking through the beautiful forest that surrounded Brighton. One evening, he ___³ (take) his umbrella and ___⁴ (go) for a walk in the woods. He ___⁵ (meet) an old man named Frank. Frank ___⁶ (tell) Thomas that, if he ___⁷ (want) to become rich, he should invest in a little known stock called Microsoft. Thomas ___⁸ (think) Frank ___⁹ (be) foolish because Microsoft ___¹⁰ (be) a computer stock. Everybody ___¹¹ (know) that computers ___¹² (be) just a passing fad. At any rate, Frank ___¹³ (insist) that Thomas ___¹⁴ (be) mistaken. Frank ___¹⁵ (draw) a wonderful graph of future possibilities. Thomas ___¹⁶ (begin) thinking that maybe Frank ___¹⁷ (understand) stocks. Thomas ___¹⁸ (decide) to buy some of these stocks. The next day, he ___¹⁹ (go) to the stock broker's and ___²⁰ (buy) \$1,000 worth of Microsoft stock. That ___²¹ (be) in 1986, today that \$1,000 worth of stock is worth more than \$250,000!

Insert the following *past continuous fragments* into the above story:

- 1) when Tomas was living in
- 2) it was raining so
- 3) while he was walking to work
- 4) when someone was investing as Frank was drawing the graph
- 5) while they were discussing the stock
- 6) when he was returning from his walk
- 7) as he was walking through the woods
- 8) as Thomas was thinking of
- 9) as he was going to the stock broker's
- 10) as he was not even planning to become rich

Rewrite your story using the above given *past continuous fragments*:

◆ **Exercise 2.** Complete the text below with the verbs in appropriate tenses. Choose from the multiple-choice options given below:

1. Last night, while I ___¹ a brief on my client's case, my sister Angela ___² me right from the lecture room at the Washington and Lee University.

a) was doing; b) wrote; c) did; d) was writing

a) was calling; b) called; c) calls; d) call

2. She said she ___³ on her cell phone while her professor of law N. ___⁴ a lecture to a packed audience at the Millhouse Moot Court Room.

a) were hanging; b) hung; c) hang; d) was hanging

a) were delivering; b) delivered; c) was delivering; d) delivers

3. I couldn't believe she ___⁵ a phone call during the lecture, so I asked what ___⁶ on.

a) made; b) makes; c) was making; d) didn't make

a) were going; b) was going; c) went; d) goes

4. I thought that she probably ___⁷ for her class, but she laughed and said that the professor was at the front of the hall lecturing while she ___⁸ to me.

a) wait; b) waited; c) was waiting; d) waits

a) were talking; b) talks; c) was talking; d) talked

5. She said her law professor was so boring that several of the students' actually ___⁹ in the class.

a) was sleeping; b) slept; c) were sleeping; d) sleep

6. Some of the students ___¹⁰ their plans for the weekend and the student next to her ___¹¹ a funny picture of a horse with the professor's face.

a) discuss; b) was discussing; c) were discussing; d) discussed

a) drew; b) were drawing; c) draws; d) was drawing

7. While we were talking, I ___¹² her professor yell, "Miss, are you making a phone call?" and suddenly, the line ___¹³ dead.

a) am hearing; b) hear; c) heard; d) was hearing

a) was going; b) was gone; c) goes; d) went

8. I ___¹⁴ up the phone and ___¹⁵ to the kitchen to make a cup of coffee.

a) were hanging; b) was hanging; c) hung; d) hang

a) goes; b) went c) was going; d) was gone

9. I ___¹⁶ quite upset about Angela's negligence to her legal training course since my parents and I always ___¹⁷ of her to make a really good lawyer.

a) was feeling; b) felt; c) feel; d) feels

a) was dreaming; b) dreamt; c) dream; d) were dreaming

◆ **Exercise 3.** Fill in the gaps with a suitable form of the verb in brackets. Most of these are past simple or continuous, some are passive. Put *yes/ no* and *Wh questions* to each of the sentences:

1. A three-year-old British girl ___¹ (reunite) with her parents after she ___² (be/ free) by the police from her kidnappers in southern Nigeria.

YN _____

WH _____

2. The kidnappers, who ___³ (hold) her for several days, ___⁴ (threaten) to kill the girl unless a ransom ___⁵ (be/ pay) or the Briton, Mr. Hill, took her place.

YN _____

WH _____

3. Margaret Hill's parents, Mike and Ouchy Hill, ___⁶ (say) she ___⁷ (be) in good health but unfortunately she "___⁸ (be/ cover) by mosquito bites".

YN _____

WH _____

4. Mr. Hill, an oil worker, ___⁹ (not/ pay) any ransom, as instead he ___¹⁰ (agree) to take his daughter's place.

YN _____

WH _____

5. Margaret ___¹¹ (be/ snatch) on Thursday morning when the unknown gunmen ___¹² (smash) the window of a car, which always ___¹³ (drive) her to school in Port Harcourt as it ___¹⁴ (stand) in a traffic jam.

YN _____

WH _____

6. The car's driver ___¹⁵ (be/ stab) when he ___¹⁶ (try) to protect the girl and ___¹⁷ (be/ later/ take) to the nearby hospital due to his severe injuries.

YN _____

WH _____

7. The abductors ___¹⁸ (contact) Margaret's mother, Ouchy Hill, and ___¹⁹ (demand) an unspecified ransom for Margaret's release.

YN _____

WH _____

8. The kidnappers ___²⁰ (vow) to kill the girl but the police ___²¹ (manage) to avert that evil.

YN _____

WH _____

◆ **Exercise 4.** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct verb tense:

A bank robbery

The robbery ___¹ (happen) yesterday just before the closing time. A gang of robbers ___² (run) into the Redder Street branch of Hong Kong bank and ___³ (steal) an estimated HK\$15,000,000 in cash plus valuables from safe deposit boxes of unknown value. Eye witnesses ___⁴ (see) the moment when the four men ___⁵ (enter) the building. They ___ all ___⁶ (carry) hand guns and ___⁷ (wear) stocking masks over their faces. A security guard ___⁸ (attempt) to resist the men. The robbers ___⁹ (shoot) him in the legs. The guard ___ later ___¹⁰ (have) treatment and ___¹¹ (recover) in the Queen Elizabeth Hospital. The gang ___¹² (force) the customers and staff to lie on the floor while the robbery ___¹³ (take place). Police ___¹⁴ (arrive) within ten minutes but they ___¹⁵ (have) little information to work on. The robbers ___¹⁶ (escape) in a stolen blue Toyota, which the police later ___¹⁷ (find) in a back street in Sheung Wan. After the robbery, the police ___¹⁸ (interrogate) all of the staff and customers at the bank, so that they ___¹⁹ (can) get a description of the offenders. The following day the police ___²⁰ (arrest) someone, Ronnie by name, in one of the bars in Wan Chai where he ___²¹ (spend) or just ___²² (waste) a lot of money. They ___²³ (handcuff) him, so he ___²⁴ (not/ can) run away, and ___²⁵ (take) him to the police station where Detective Inspector Chan ___²⁶ (ask) him a lot of questions.



Read the story again and answer the given questions:

1. Which bank was robbed? _____
2. What time/when did the robbery happen? _____
3. How many robbers were there? _____
4. What did the robbers carry? _____
5. What did they wear over their faces? _____
6. What did the security guard do? _____
7. Who did the offenders force to lie on the floor? _____
8. What did the robbers do to the security guard? _____
9. How much did they steal? _____
10. What did they steal apart from the cash? _____
11. How did the robbers escape? _____
12. When did the police arrive? _____
13. Where did the police find the car? _____
14. How did the police find the suspect in the crime? _____

◆ **Exercise 5.** Check your awareness of the past simple and past continuous tenses. Put the verbs in brackets into the simple past or past continuous tense. Comment the reasons of your usage:

1. I ___¹ (come) in very late last night and unfortunately the dog ___² (wake) up and ___³ (start) to bark. This ___⁴ (wake) my mother who ___⁵ (come) to the top of the stairs and ___⁶ (say), "Who is there?" I ___⁷ (say), "It is me," but she ___⁸ (not hear) me because the dog ___⁹ (bark) so loudly, so she ___¹⁰ (go) back to her room and ___¹¹ (telephone) the police.



2. When I ___¹² (hear) his knock I ___¹³ (go) to the door and ___¹⁴ (open) it, but I ___¹⁵ (not recognize) him at first because I ___¹⁶ (not wear) my glasses.

3. The prisoner ___¹⁷ (escape) by climbing the wall of the jail where he ___¹⁸ (be/ keep). According to the police report, he ___¹⁹ (wear) blue overalls and black shoes.

4. While he ___²⁰ (make) his speech the minister suddenly ___²¹ (feel) faint. But someone ___²² (bring) him a glass of water and after a few minutes he ___²³ (be/ able) to continue.

5. Mr. Smith never ___²⁴ (wake) up in time in the mornings and always ___²⁵ (get) into trouble for being late; so one day he ___²⁶ (go) to town and ___²⁷ (buy) an alarm clock. To get home he ___²⁸ (have to) go through a field where a bad-tempered bull usually ___²⁹ (graze). This bull normally ___³⁰ (not chase) people unless something ___³¹ (make) him angry. Unfortunately, as Mr. Smith ___³² (cross) the field, his alarm clock ___³³ (go) off. This ___³⁴ (annoy) the bull, who immediately ___³⁵ (begin) to chase Mr. Smith. Mr. Smith ___³⁶ (carry) an open umbrella as it ___³⁷ (rain) slightly. He ___³⁸ (throw) the umbrella to the ground and ___³⁹ (run) away as fast as he could. The bull ___⁴⁰ (stop) and ___⁴¹ (begin) to attack the umbrella. While he ___⁴² (do) this Mr. Smith escaped.

6. The murderer ___⁴³ (carry) the corpse down the stairs when he ___⁴⁴ (hear) a knock on the door.

7. As we ___⁴⁵ (drive) down the road a policeman ___⁴⁶ (stop) us. He ___⁴⁷ (say) that they ___⁴⁸ (look) for some stolen property and ___⁴⁹ (ask) if he ___⁵⁰ (can) search the car.

8. I ___⁵¹ (take) my friend to a murder trial the other day. A man called Bill Sykes ___⁵² (be) tried by a board of 12 laymen. All through the trial we

___⁵³ (listen) to the blood freezing details of the barbaric felony! The jury ___⁵⁴ still (listen) to the evidence when we ___⁵⁵ (leave).

9. I ___⁵⁶ (sign) my cheque when I ___⁵⁷ (remember) that I ___⁵⁸ (have) nothing on my bank account.

10. I ___⁵⁹ (share) a flat with him once when we ___⁶⁰ (be) students. He always ___⁶¹ (complain) about my untidiness.

11. When I ___⁶² (arrive) at the station Mary ___⁶³ (wait) for me. She ___⁶⁴ (wear) a nice blue dress and ___⁶⁵ (look) very pretty. As soon as she ___⁶⁶ (see) me she ___⁶⁷ (wave) and ___⁶⁸ (shout) something, but I ___⁶⁹ (can't) hear what she ___⁷⁰ (say) because everybody ___⁷¹ (make) such a noise!

12. When I last ___⁷² (see) her she ___⁷³ (hurry) along the road to the station. I ___⁷⁴ (ask) her where she ___⁷⁵ (go) and she ___⁷⁶ (say), "London," but she obviously ___⁷⁷ (not/ speak) the truth because there ___⁷⁸ (not/ be) any train for London at that time.

13. While I ___⁷⁹ (swim) someone ___⁸⁰ (steal) my clothes and I ___⁸¹ (have to) walk home in my swimsuit.

14. At 3 a.m. Mrs. Pitt ___⁸² (wake) her husband and ___⁸³ (say) that she ___⁸⁴ (think) that someone ___⁸⁵ (try) to get into the house.

15. I ___⁸⁶ (not/ want) to meet Paul so when he just ___⁸⁷ (enter) the room I ___⁸⁸ (decide) to leave. Unfortunately, as I rapidly ___⁸⁹ (cross) the room I ___⁹⁰ (step) on a banana skin and ___⁹¹ (fall) heavily.

16. The burglar ___⁹² (open) the safe when he ___⁹³ (hear) footsteps. He ___⁹⁴ (put) out his torch and immediately ___⁹⁵ (crawl) under the bed.

17. He ___⁹⁶ (clean) his gun when it accidentally ___⁹⁷ (go) off and ___⁹⁸ (kill) him.

18. He suddenly ___⁹⁹ (realize) that he ___¹⁰⁰ (travel) in the wrong direction.

19. I still ___¹⁰¹ (stand) on the road all frustrated when I ___¹⁰² (see) a lorry approaching. Luckily the driver ___¹⁰³ (see) me too and ___¹⁰⁴ (stop) the lorry in time. "How you ___¹⁰⁵ (damage) your car so badly?" he ___¹⁰⁶ (asked) me with sympathy. "I ___¹⁰⁷ (run) into a lamp-post," I ___¹⁰⁸ (said). He ___¹⁰⁹ (think) for a while and then ___¹¹⁰ (resume), "I suppose you ___¹¹¹ (drive) too quickly or were not looking where you ___¹¹² (go)."

20. While the guests ___¹¹³ (dance) thieves ___¹¹⁴ (break) into the house and ___¹¹⁵ (steal) a lot of fur coats. The next day, as they ___¹¹⁶ (know) that the police ___¹¹⁷ (look) for them, they ___¹¹⁸ (hide) the coats in a wood and ___¹¹⁹ (go) off in different directions. The police publicly ___¹²⁰ (announce) about a reward to catch the thieves but no one ___¹²¹ (call) yet.



V. The Future (Indefinite) Simple Tense

Form = will + verb

Form = am/is/are + going to + verb

Simple Future has two different forms in English: "will" and "be going to", which both refer to a specific time in the future; can sometimes be used interchangeably, but they often express two very different meanings. In the Simple Future, it is not always clear which USE the speaker has in mind. It could be active/ passive; positive/ interrogative/ and negative.

1. "Will" to Express a Voluntary Action – "Will" often suggests that a speaker will do something voluntarily. A voluntary action is one the speaker offers to do for someone else. Often, we use "will" to respond to someone else's complaint or request for help. Similarly, we use "will not" or "won't" when we refuse to voluntarily do something.

E.g.: I will send you the information when I get it.

2. "Will" to Express a Promise – "Will" is usually used in promises.

E.g.: I will call you when I arrive.

3. "Be going to" to Express a Plan – "Be going to" expresses that something is a plan. It expresses the idea that a person intends to do something in the future. It does not matter whether the plan is realistic or not. E.g.: Michelle is going to begin law school next year.

4. "Will" or "Be Going to" to Express a Prediction – Both "will" and "be going to" can express the idea of a general prediction about the future. Predictions are guesses about what might happen in the future. In "prediction" sentences, the subject usually has little control over the future and therefore USES 1-3 do not apply. In the following examples, there is no difference in meaning.

E.g.: John Smith will be the next President.

E.g.: John Smith is going to be the next President.

5. The consequence of a condition – the future simple tense is used to express the consequence of a condition.

E.g.: If staff continue being late for work, I will have to take action.

No Future in Time Clauses – like all future forms, the Simple Future cannot be used in clauses beginning with time expressions such as: when, while, before, after, by the time, as soon as, if, unless, etc. Instead of Simple Future, Simple Present is used.



Your Training Exercises



Exercise A: Choose the correct tense form from the multiple-choice options. Comment the reasons to use the Future simple tense:

1. The candidate ___¹ many voters when she will run for the governor next year.

a) **impress; b) impressed; c) will impress**

2. People ___² to Jupiter before the 22nd century.

a) **won't go; b) don't go; c) didn't go**

3. I believe the stock market ___³ again soon.

a) **will go up; b) go up; c) went**

4. The Government ___⁴ to introduce a new law.

a) is going; b) will; c) would

5. When she comes, I ___⁵ her you want to see her.

a) **tell; b) told; c) will tell**

6. There's a vote coming up this week in Washington that ___⁶ on how you use the internet.

a) **impacted; b) impacts; c) will have a big impact**

7. The U.S. Department of Transportation ___⁷ a Distracted Driving Summit next week, since automobile and tech companies must be cautious in crafting new distracted driving laws. They say if narrow legislation ___⁸ new technology that will make cars only safer.

a) **held; b) will hold; c) holds**

a) **will stifle; b) not stifle; c) stifles**

8. Aaron Dunn runs an organization called MusOpen, dedicated to providing copyright-free music. Pretty soon all Internet users ___⁹ a library of classical music played by symphony orchestras for free.

a) **gave; b) will give; c) will be given**

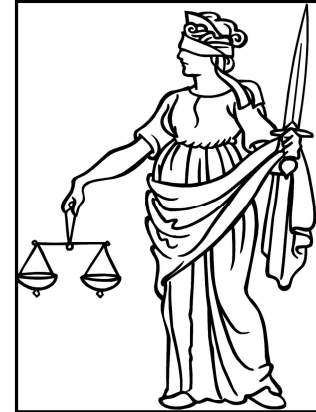
9. As a variation of their software donation program, Microsoft ___¹⁰ a blanket license non-governmental organizations or NGOs in Russia, making all the software they run legal.

a) **issue; b) will issue; c) will be issued**

10. Apple is getting social. And its new version of iTunes ___¹¹ social network called Ping which ___¹².

a) **had; b) will have; c) have**

a) **builds right in; b) will be built right in; c) will built right in**





Exercise B: The sentences on the left are in the Future Simple tense; Some words are in bold type. Match these words with their meaning:

Statement	Meaning
1) We will believe you are innocent when you show us your receipt for the items in the bag.	a) Describes a note that you must pay money as a punishment for not obeying a rule or law.
2) We will keep you in a cell until someone comes to pay your bail.	b) Describes action of taking someone under the police control.
3) We will take your brother down to the station to book him.	c) Describes an amount of money to be paid as a punishment for not obeying a rule or law.
4) Due to the difficulty of the case twenty officers will investigate the bank robbery .	d) Describes a minor who commits a crime (usually under age of 18)
5) We will not allow anyone with a criminal record to enter into our country.	e) Describes action to register someone as a criminal.
6) You will be happy to know that we have taken the kidnapper into custody .	f) Describes that someone is not responsible for the crime
7) You won't be required to do any time but you will have to pay a fine.	g) Describes police officer responsible for solving crime.
8) If you try to escape we will have to restrain you with handcuffs.	h) Describes something that makes you understand there is a possible danger or problem in the future.
9) You will have to pay a fine for this.	i) Describes crime such as drugs and prostitution.
10) I will give you a warning this time.	j) Describes getting away from a holding place.
11) The police will fire warning shots if the protesters will take no notice .	k) Describes a file that lists all crimes a person has committed.
12) I'm going to write you a ticket .	l) Describes action of not giving attention to something.
13) The detective is going to ask you a few questions about the man's appearance.	m) Describes individual room in a jail or prison.
14) Don't give the beggars any money. You will only promote street crime .	n) Describes receiving punishment for a crime by spending time in jail.
15) Your punishment will be less severe because you are a young offender .	o) Describes theft; taking something that does not belong to you, often with force.



Exercise C: Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Simple. The exercise contains requests/ invitations/ questions about intentions:

1. You ___¹ (disclose) the terms of your contract for me, please? ~ Yes, certainly, since we hope you ___² (help) us to restore our civil rights.
2. You ___³ (conduct) the interrogation of the suspect tonight? ~ No, I think it can wait till tomorrow.
3. I'm looking for new circumstances of the case. ~ You ___⁴ (try) to investigate that difficult case all by yourself?
4. "You ___⁵ (pronounce) your name aloud, please," said the interrogator.
5. You ___⁶ (need) any more of this substance for your DNA test, or I ___⁷ (tell) the assistant to take it away?
6. You aren't wearing your protective suit. You ___⁸ (not participate) in the self-defense exercises with the others?
7. "You ___⁹ (listen) to me and answer my questions!" said the police officer angrily.
8. You ___¹⁰ (put) your car away from here, please? I must inform you, that parking is forbidden in the centre of Paris. Otherwise you ___¹¹ (be/fine) for illegal parking.
9. You ___¹² (have) another cup of coffee? ~ No, thank you.
10. You ___¹³ (come) and see me after the preliminary court hearing? I want to discuss some type of the further legal procedure with you.
11. I see that you have ordered the *Guardian*. You really ___¹⁴ (read) it?
12. I assume she ___¹⁵ (not/ win) the next election due to her low popularity.
13. You ___¹⁶ (give) me a ride, please? I don't like driving at night.
14. I ___¹⁷ (not/ permit) that kind of behavior even in the absence of special regulations.
15. Why have you brought your laptop? You ___¹⁸ (work) this afternoon?
16. You ___¹⁹ (sign) the document right here, please?
17. What are all those notes for? You ___²⁰ (give) a lecture?



Exercise D: Choose the correct tense form from the multiple-choice options. Comment the reasons why you use *Will* or *going to*?

1. You ___¹ be a famous lawyer some day.

a) are going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

2. You must read this book about the criminal types. I'm sure you ____² like it. **a) are going to; b) will; c) either could be used here**

REASON _____

3. He ____³ finish his homework in twenty minutes.

a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

4. I ____⁴ translate the email, so Mr. Smith can read it.

a) am going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

5. If I am elected President of the United States, I ____⁵ make sure everyone has access to inexpensive health insurance.

a) am going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

6. Franck ____⁶ begin his law school next year.

a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

7. After I graduate, I ____⁷ (attend) law school and become a lawyer. I have wanted to be a lawyer all my life.

a) am going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

8. John Smith ____⁸ be the next President.

a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

9. I need to change the oil in my car. ____⁹ you help me?

a) are going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

10. Some statisticians predict that there ____¹⁰ be 10 billion people in the world by 2050. **a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here**

REASON _____

11. My supervisor is a really nice guy. He promised me a big bonus this year. He promised me that he ____¹¹ give me \$2500 if we increase sales by 10%. **a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here**

REASON _____

12. I have a two-week vacation in August. I ____¹² (fly) to Vietnam.

a) am going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

13. Helen sold her house and now she ____¹³ buy another one.

a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

14. Ben ___¹⁴ lend you some money for your shopping needs. You ___¹⁵ see him when you go to the party.

a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

15. If the people of the world do not stop cutting down huge stretches of rain forest, we ___¹⁶ (experience) huge changes in the environment during the twenty-first century.

a) are going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

16. I hope that the next time I ___¹⁷ find fewer grammatical errors in your writing. **a) am going to; b) will; c) either could be used here**

REASON _____

17. I promise you that I ___¹⁸ tell your secret to anybody. Even if somebody asks me about what happened that day, I ___¹⁹ reveal the truth to a single person. **a) am not going to; b) will not; c) either could be used here**

a) am not going to; b) will not; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

18. After I receive my Master's from Georgetown University, I ___²⁰ go to graduate school at UCSD in San Diego.

a) am going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____

19. If Jim keeps violating the corporate etiquette, he ___²¹ eventually/ lose his job. **a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here**

REASON _____

20. She ___²² make some major changes in her life. She ___²³ quit her job and go back to school. **a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here //**

a) is going to; b) will; c) either could be used here

REASON _____



Exercise E: Complete the sentences given below. Use the future with 'will' to:

1) Make a future prediction:

1. Psychic reading for future prediction ___¹ (aid) folks to make their life easy and comfortable.

2. In the near future, aliens ___² (visit) the earth.

3. In the distant future, everyone in the world ___³ be able to speak English.
4. By 2050 most geologists ___⁴ (agree) that most of earth's oil and gas reserves were not produced by decaying plants.
5. The city of the new age ___⁵ (be made) of glass spirals of technology.
6. If anything remains more or less unchanged, it ___⁶ (be) the role of women. (David Riesman, American social scientist, 1967)
7. By 2060 the total population of humans on earth ___⁷ (be) less than it is today. (<http://www.longbets.org/predictions>)
8. In 2012, 75% of all revenue for enterprise software companies ___⁸ (be) from subscription fees rather than license fees. (<http://www.longbets.org/predictions>)
9. By 2050, at least two pan-regional currencies, modeled on the Euro, ___⁹ (be used) in the world. (<http://www.longbets.org/predictions>)
10. The Hedonistic Imperative outlines how genetic engineering and nanotechnology ___¹⁰ abolish suffering in all sentient life. (<http://www.hedweb.com>)
11. Researchers at the Fraunhofer Institute in Germany have developed a new interactive store window which ___¹¹ allow passersby to shop even after store hours. (<http://www.wfs.org/content/february-2011-vol-12-no-2>)
12. The ongoing merger of life, physical, and engineering sciences ___¹² (revolutionize) biomedicine, MIT researchers claim in a new white paper.
13. If the global population rises to 9.5 billion by 2050, and every one of those people adopts the American standard of living, global energy demand ___¹³ (increase) by a factor of 16 according to a recent paper by a team of University of New Mexico biologists and other researchers.
14. By the year 2150, over 50% of schools in the USA or Western Europe ___¹⁴ (require) classes in defending against robot attacks..
15. By 2025 at least 50% of all U.S. citizens residing within the United States ___¹⁵ (have) some form of technology embedded in their bodies for the purpose of tracking and identification.

<p>2) Express a decision made about the future at the moment:</p>
--

1. Does Jack remember about his promise to help you? ~ Oh, yes, he ___¹⁶ (post) grammar worksheets on-line!
2. Did you tell him the truth? ~ No, I forgot, but I ___¹⁷ (tell) him tomorrow.
3. I have a terrible headache. I ___¹⁸ (finish) my report later this afternoon.
4. Competition between major companies ___¹⁹ (lead) to the elimination of firms which have little resources to change their methods of production.

5. Changes in the rate of interest on government securities only ____²⁰ (affect) share prices.
6. The imposition of indirect taxes ____²¹ (bring/ certainly) changes in supply.
7. To be more exact, I ____²² (send) you the reference to the necessary extract from the document.
8. Ask him again. Perhaps, he ____²³ (change) his mind.
9. I have no doubt, that if you follow all instructions of your lawyer, your endless problems with the Parole Board ____²⁴ (be/ resolve) soon.
10. No wonder, that there ____²⁵ (be) an investigation into the mayor's business affairs. There was a newspaper article about his accomplice in a money-laundering hoax!

3) Make a promise:

1. I ____²⁶ (try) to collect as many evidences as possible this afternoon if you want me to.
2. If I am elected the President of the United States, I ____²⁷ (make sure) everyone has access to inexpensive and high-quality education.
3. I ____²⁸ (not/ disclose) to any strangers the terms of your confidentiality agreement. Trust me!
4. I ____²⁹ (tell) your parents about your abusive behavior.
5. They ____³⁰ (invite) Professor Dunce to make a speech at the scientific conference this coming Monday.
6. They say, that the police ____³¹ (report) the results of their investigation of the computer fraud next week.
7. Thank you for lending me the car. I ____³² (give) it back on Sunday.
8. If you ask him directly, you ____³³ (get) his honest personal opinion.
9. The management and staff of this establishment ____³⁴ (not/ be) responsible for any loss of personal property, life, etc.
10. I promise, that I ____³⁵ (send) you the information when I get it.

4) Think about future possibilities:

1. If the defendant is convicted, he ____³⁶ (appeal/ certainly) to the court of higher instance.
2. If that company fails, thousands of workers ____³⁷ (lose) their jobs.
3. The price of that company's stock ____³⁸ (fall/ surely) if its CEO (Chief executive officer) goes to prison.
4. The government spending ____³⁹ (be/reduce) significantly if the president

signs the bill.

5. If that bill becomes a law, it ___⁴⁰ (increase) the inflation by 10% at least.

6. If the retailer doesn't sell enough of our product, he ___⁴¹ (stop) buying from us.

7. If I move to the suburbs, I ___⁴² (spend) an hour commuting each way.

8. If I go to France this coming summer, I ___⁴³ (visit/undoubtedly) Chartres Cathedral.

9. If I get bored at the meeting, I ___⁴⁴ (leave/probably) early.

10. It is expected that they ___⁴⁵ (get/ marry).

11. If you tune on your music too loudly, you ___⁴⁶ (have/ probably) hearing problems when you get older.

12. If my car breaks down again, I ___⁴⁷ (not/take) it to that garage.



Exercise F: Choose the correct answer for each of the "every day" questions/ remarks given below. Put the tick to confirm your choice:

1. What would you like to drink?

– I'll have a gin and tonic, please. _____

– I'll open a window, if you like. _____

– I'll give you a hand. What do you want me to do first? _____

– In that case, I won't go. I hate – crowds. _____

– I don't think I'll play golf this afternoon after all. _____

2. There are going to be lots of people at the match tonight.

– I'll help you with it. _____

– It's a bit late. I'll phone her in the morning. _____

– I'll take a look at it as soon as I've finished what I'm doing. _____

– In that case, I won't go. I hate crowds. _____

– No. I don't think we'll stay a second night, do you? _____

3. Mr. Smith is busy at the moment.

– I'll go. _____

– I'll make you a sandwich, if you like. _____

– I'll bring it back this evening. _____

– Well, I won't wait. I'll come back later. _____

– I think I'll walk. It's a nice evening. _____

4. I don't have time to do everything.

– I'll lend you some. You can pay me back when you have some. _____

– It's a bit late. I'll phone her in the morning. _____

– I'll give you a hand. What do you want me to do first? _____

– I can see you're busy so I won't stop long. _____

– No. I don't think we'll stay a second night, do you? _____

5. It's terrible stuffy in here.

– I'll lend you some. You can pay me back when you have some. _____

– I'll open a window, if you like. _____

– I'll have some coffee, please. _____

– I won't say a word to anyone. _____

– I think I'll have an early night. _____

6. Would you like a lift home?

– I'll have a gin and tonic, please. _____

– I'll go to the shops and get some. _____

– I'll bring it back this evening. _____

– Well, I won't wait. I'll come back later. _____

– I think I'll walk. It's a nice evening. _____

7. We're completely out of coffee.

– I won't buy any. _____

– I'll go to the shops and get some. _____

– I'll have some coffee, please. _____

– I won't say a word to anyone. _____

– I think I'll have an early night. _____

8. Nice to see you, Mary.

– I'll help you with it. _____

– I'll open a window, if you like. _____

– I'll take a look at it as soon as I've finished what I'm doing. _____

– I can see you're busy so I won't stop long. _____

– I think I'll walk. It's a nice evening. _____

9. The weather looks awful.

– I'll go. _____

– I'll make you a sandwich, if you like. _____

– I'll take a look at it as soon as I've finished what I'm doing. _____

– Well, I won't wait. I'll come back later. _____

– I don't think I'll play golf this afternoon after all. _____

10. Please keep this to yourself.

– I'll lend you some. You can pay me back when you have some. _____

– I'll go to the shops and get some. _____

– I'll take a look at it as soon as I've finished what I'm doing. _____

– I won't say a word to anyone. _____

– I think I'll walk. It's a nice evening. _____



Exercise G: Look at the chart given below. On your left you will find the examples with Future simple inside and on your right – the reasons to do so. Match *will* or *going to* with the reason to use:

Example	Reason
1) I will finish my report later today.	a) Used to show strong intention.
2) I am going to meet my lawyer this afternoon to resolve the issue.	b) A formal style is required to speak about fixed arrangements.
3) The robbery case is too difficult to investigate. I'll help you.	c) Used to say that something will happen in the future.
4) I will find a job.	d) Used to make threats.
5) The ceremony will begin at 4 pm, followed by a meal and a big party.	e) The signal word – <i>next month</i> – indicates the tense.
6) I'm going to buy a car this year.	f) Used to emphasize.
7) I'll tell the police what you did.	g) To form a negative sentence.
8) Will you please help me to restore my civil rights?	h) Used to talk about prior plans.
9) There will be another conference on treatment of criminals next month.	i) To say what we think or believe will happen (to predict).
10) Shall I close the door?	j) Used to offer help.
11) The accused shall be present during the trial.	k) Used to make offers (mainly in British English)
12) They won't accept this offer.	l) To talk about consequences.
13) The Chairman shall be present at the Company's general meetings.	m) To form an interrogative sentence.
14) She will tell him when he calls.	n) Used as an imperative in formal written statements
15) Will you do it for me, please?	o) The signal word – <i>probably</i> – indicates the tense.
16) I'll probably get there by my car.	p) Used as an imperative in legal written statements.
17) I think you are going to marry a wrong person. He is wanted by police.	q) Used to make promises.
18) I think David Brown will be the next mayor of our city.	r) Used to make prediction with concrete evidence.
19) I'll be there at 7 p.m., I promise.	s) Used to express spontaneous decision
20) I'll close the window.	t) Used to request help.



It is interesting to know

In order to make language a lot more expressive and interesting we should try to vary the words we use!

1. **Synonyms** are different words with almost identical or similar meanings. Words that are *synonyms* are said to be *synonymous*, and the *state of being a synonym* is called *synonymy*. The word comes from two Ancient Greek words: the prefix "syn" means "together" and "onym" is "name." Thus, "*synonyms*" – is "*naming the same thing.*" Words from any part of speech can have synonyms, as long as they both have the same part of speech:

E.g.: Amazing, awesome, incredible, astonishing (adjectives); Car, auto, automobile, motorcar (nouns); Participate, take part, join (verbs); Quickly, fast, promptly (adverbs); On, upon (prepositions). When replacing a word with its synonym, make sure the meaning of the sentence in the specific context is maintained as well. Synonyms are defined according to *certain senses of words*.

2. **Antonyms** are words with opposite or nearly opposite meanings.

E.g.: short and tall; dead and alive; increase and decrease; add and subtract. The words *synonym* and *antonym* are *antonyms* themselves.

3. **Hypernyms** and **hyponyms** are words that refer to, respectively, a general category and a specific instance of that category.

E.g.: *vehicle* is a hypernym of *car*, and *car* is a hyponym of *vehicle*.

4. **Homonyms** are words that sound or are spelled the same, but have different meanings. *The state of being a homonym* is called *homonymy*.

E.g.: *bank* (embankment) and *bank* (place where money is kept).

5. **Homographs** are words that share the same spelling, irrespective of their pronunciation.

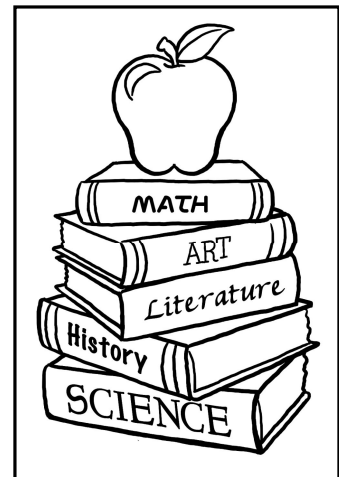
E.g.: *fair* (pleasing in appearance) and *fair* (market).

6. **Homophones** are words that share the same pronunciation, irrespective of their spelling.

E.g.: night (the hours of darkness) and knight (chevalier).

7. **Heteronyms** are words that share the same spelling that have different pronunciation and meaning.

E.g.: row (a series of objects arranged in a line) and row (a fight).





VI. The Future Continuous (Progressive) Tense

Form = will be + present participle

Form = am/is/are + going to + present participle

Future Continuous has two different forms: "will be doing " and "be going to be doing." The Future Continuous forms are usually interchangeable. It could be active/ passive; positive/ interrogative/ and negative.

1. Interrupted Action in the Future – the Future Continuous is used to indicate that a longer action in the future will be interrupted by a shorter action in the future. This can be a real interruption or just an interruption in time. The interruptions are in the Simple Present because the interruptions are in time clauses, and you cannot use future tenses in time clauses.

E.g.: I will be waiting for you when your bus arrives.

E.g.: I am going to be staying at the Madison Hotel, if anything happens and you need to contact me.

2. Specific Time as an Interruption in the Future – in addition to using short actions as interruptions (as in *Use 1* above), you can also use a specific time as an interruption.

E.g.: At midnight tonight, we will still be driving through the desert.

3. Parallel Actions in the Future – we use the Future Continuous with two actions in the same sentence, it expresses the idea that both actions will be happening at the same time. The actions are parallel.

E.g.: Tonight, they will be discussing their plans and having a good time.

4. Atmosphere in the Future – we often use a series of Parallel Actions to describe atmosphere at a specific point in the future.

E.g.: When I arrive at the party, everybody is going to be celebrating. Some will be dancing. Others are going to be talking. Several people are going to be drinking beer. They always do the same thing.

No Future in Time Clauses – like all future forms, the Future Continuous cannot be used in clauses beginning with time expressions such as: *when, while, before, after, by the time, as soon as, if, unless, etc.* Instead of Future Continuous, Present Continuous is used.

It is also important to remember that Non-Continuous Verbs cannot be used in any continuous tenses. Also, certain non-continuous meanings for Mixed Verbs cannot be used in continuous tenses. Instead of using Future Continuous with these verbs, you must use Simple Future.



Your Training Exercises



Exercise A: Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form:
Choose between the Future Simple and Future Continuous tenses:

1. At the time tomorrow we ___¹ (take) our exam on Civil Law.
2. The judge ___² (instruct) the jury before giving the verdict.
3. "I ___³ (not/ tell) the truth," cried the suspect.
4. The policeman ___⁴ (ask) you some questions about the theft.
5. In a week at the time the court ___⁵ (hear) his case in the Crown Court.
6. I've bought "Criminal News". I ___⁶ (read) it.
7. You ___⁷ (help) me with the investigation?
8. The audience thinks that the court ___⁸ (acquit) the juvenile.
9. In a few days at that moment the main witness ___⁹ (give) his testimony.
10. The inspector ___¹⁰ (interrogate) the suspect from 9 till 12 o'clock.
11. Tomorrow from the very morning Mr. Black ___¹¹ (examine) the scene of the crime.
12. Don't wait for me I ___¹² (have) a chat with the Dean.
13. How long the prisoner ___¹³ (stay) in the cell?
14. How you ___¹⁴ (explain) your being at the scene crime?
15. When we come the counsel for the defense ___¹⁵ (give) his speech.
16. I suppose we ___¹⁶ (complete) this case in a week.
17. According to the forecast, tomorrow it ___¹⁷ (be) neither cold nor wet.
18. How long the police ___¹⁸ (investigate) the robbery of the bank?
19. We hope the police ___¹⁹ (find out) the witness for the prosecution.
20. We are sure it ___²⁰ (rain).
21. The thief ___²¹ (spend) 3 years in imprisonment.
22. He ___²² (not/wait) for the verdict.
23. (Use) ___²³ you your car this evening?
24. At 10 o'clock she ___²⁴ (be) in her office. She ___²⁵ (work).
25. I never ___²⁶ (break) the law.
26. Wait a little! He ___²⁷ (call) the taxi.
27. I ___²⁸ (not/talk) to the barrister at the time tomorrow.
28. He ___²⁹ (pass) the post office when you're out.
29. What time the trial on your case ___³⁰ (begin)?
30. They ___³¹ (not/translate) the article soon.
31. The Browns ___³² (arrive) the next week.



Exercise B: Choose the correct verb form the multiple-choice options given below to complete the sentences:

1. The judge ___¹ the court-room in a minute.
a) is going to enter; b) will enter; c) will be entering
2. At this time tomorrow the detective ___² us his questions.
a) is going to ask; b) will ask; c) will be asking
3. After we pass the final exams we ___³ a practical work in the investigating department, Prosecutor's office and other places.
a) are going to have; b) will have; c) will be having
4. The accused ___⁴ to his advocate the whole morning through tomorrow.
a) is not going to talk; b) will not talk; c) will not be talking
5. Next year I ___⁵ to enter the Law faculty again.
a) am going to try; b) will try; c) will be trying
6. The inspector ___⁶ the witnesses all day long.
a) is going to interview; b) will interview; c) will be interviewing
7. At 10 o'clock the day after tomorrow the magistrates ___⁷ the case of the larceny.
a) are going to hear; b) will hear; c) will be hearing
8. First, the lawyers of both sides ___⁸ open statements.
a) are going to give; b) shall give; c) shall be giving
9. The weather is warm today. We ___⁹ out in the garden for some time in the evening.
a) are going to walk; b) will walk; c) will be walking
10. I'm really tired today. I think I ___¹⁰ to bed earlier.
a) am going to go; b) will go; c) will be going
11. At 9 o'clock next Monday the investigator ___¹¹ the suspect at the police department.
a) is going to interrogate; b) will interrogate; c) will be interrogating
12. How long the accused ___¹² in prison?
a) is going to stay; b) will stay; c) will be staying
13. I ___¹³ a judge after graduating from the Law College.
a) am going to become; b) will become; c) will be becoming
14. He ___¹⁴ busy tomorrow. He ___¹⁵ his exam in Criminology.
a) is going to be; b) will be; c) will be being
- a) is going to take; b) will take; c) will be taking**
15. My sister ___¹⁶ Jimmy K., a well-known certified notary, next month.
a) is going to marry; b) will marry; c) will be marrying



Exercise C: Look at the chart given below. On your left you will find the examples with Future Continuous inside and on your right – the reasons to do so. Match the examples with the reasons:

Example	Reason
1) They'll be discussing the draft bill all month at least.	a) Used to project ourselves into the future and see something happening.
2) Is IBM going to be recruiting any new personnel in the near future?	b) Shows that the shorter action interrupts or crosses the longer one.
3) As you know, I'll be working overtime this evening.	c) Shows that the event is certain and will happen naturally.
4) The lawyer will be addressing the Court at 9.15am.	d) Shows that two parallel actions will be happening at the same time.
5) She will be crying every day this week when she reads that note!	e) Used for predictions or expected trends in the future.
6) Don't call him now; he'll be presiding over a meeting of the sub-committee.	f) Describes an activity that will occur in the future and continue for a certain period of time.
7) When the clock strikes midnight I'll be opening the presents tonight.	g) Describes atmosphere at a specific point in the future.
8) I will be seeing Ann tomorrow at the office, since we work together.	h) Indicates an action that will be in progress at sometime in the future.
9) While Ellen is reading the newspaper article, Tim will be watching news on television.	i) Used for actions or events forecast to be in progress at or around a particular time in the future.
10) By 2030, most people in Africa will be living in urban areas.	j) Used to make polite enquiries about someone's future plans.
11) Beatrice will be getting married very soon. She looks so happy!	k) Shows plan to do something at a specific time in the future.
12) I'm picking him up at the airport this afternoon.	l) Used to make guesses about something in the future.
13) During the trial, the lawyer will be walking in front of the jury box while summarizing his arguments.	m) Used for future events those are the result of previous arrangements.
14) WWW will be changing to a more community-oriented model.	n) Shows that the longer action was interrupted/ crossed by specific time.
15) You'll recognize me when you get there. I'll be sitting at a table at the corner and reading a newspaper.	o) Shows what we believe or guess is happening at the moment of speaking.



Exercise D: Put the following verbs into the correct tense – Present/ Future Continuous/ Future Simple. Comment the reasons:



1. This time next week I ___¹ (drive) through France.
2. When he ___² (phone), I always ___³ (have) my bath.
3. When you phone your father, tell him I ___⁴ (come) to visit him next Thursday. I ___⁵ (have) a hectic week, as we ___⁶ (draft) a new project.
4. Well, I can't write to her now because I ___⁷ (prepare) my client's brief at the moment and I've got to finish doing this before they kicked me out, but I ___⁸ (write) to her in the next few days anyway.
5. Thank you ladies and gentlemen. Well, that's all for now, but I ___⁹ (be) back tonight, and then I ___¹⁰ (sing) some more songs for you.
6. It's a pity that the holidays are almost over. A week from now I ___¹¹ (be) back to England and I ___¹² (work) as hard as ever.
7. When I fly back next week, you ___¹³ (recognize) me immediately because I ___¹⁴ (wear) extravagant pink jeans and a white t-shirt.
8. What are you plans? You ___¹⁵ (call) to see us tonight?
9. Dear Sirs, I ___¹⁶ (be) 17 years old and I ___¹⁷ (look) for a job because I ___¹⁸ (leave) school in ten weeks. You ___¹⁹ (have) any vacancy for me?
10. This time next week I ___²⁰ (know) my exam results.
11. Jane is not very happy with Steve. All right, he ___²¹ (not, earn) a fortune but he ___²² (work) as a lorry driver. It ___²³ (be) much better if he is unemployed and stays loose at home?
12. Jill ___²⁴ (give) the remainder of the breakfast to Jeremy for 15 minutes at least until she leaves for her office.
13. Meanwhile, a police car ___²⁵ (race) up the motorway and ___²⁶ (try) to catch up with Steve's lorry.
14. Mrs. Simmons ___²⁷ (hear) a car pulling up at the bottom of the garden of her isolated country cottage now and ___²⁸ (raise) herself slowly from her armchair, she ___²⁹ (go) over to the window and ___³⁰ (look) between the curtains. There, at the bottom of the garden path, is her daughter, Julie, who ___³¹ (wrap) in an enormous fur coat, but ___³² (look) cold nevertheless. Mrs. Simmons ___³³ (turn) round and ___³⁴ (move) slowly in the direction of the front door, but her rheumatism ___³⁵ (prevent) her from moving any faster.
15. Everything ___³⁶ (be/ arrange) and we ___³⁷ (leave) England by air on May 5th.



Exercise E: Put *yes/no* and *WH questions* to the following sentences in the Future continuous tense:

1. You are going to be waiting for her when her plane arrives tonight.

YN _____

WH _____

2. He will be studying at the library tonight, so he will not see Jennifer when she arrives.

YN _____

WH _____

3. I am going to be staying at the Madison Hotel, if anything happens and you need to contact me.

YN _____

WH _____

4. At midnight tonight, we will still be driving through the desert.

YN _____

WH _____

5. We'll be flying over the Atlantic Ocean for three hours.

YN _____

WH _____

6. Susan will be waiting for the bus 10 more minutes.

YN _____

WH _____

7. This time on Monday I'll be testifying in a court of law before a jury.

YN _____

WH _____

8. Unless a witness will be testifying as an expert witness, testimony is generally limited to the perceptions of the witness.

YN _____

WH _____

9. In June our company will be carrying on negotiations for the purchase of new advanced software.

YN _____

WH _____

10. That's right! He will be boarding his train in 10 minutes.

YN _____

WH _____



Exercise F: Make the negative forms from the positive or vice-versa of the sentences used in Future Continuous tense (see below):

1. At four thirty on Tuesday afternoon I will be signing the contract.

Negative _____

2. He'll be coming to the meeting, I expect.

Negative _____

3. I shall be seeing you next week to discuss further plans.

Negative _____

4. The publisher won't be expecting the final draft of your novel until next month so you have time to crank it out.

Negative _____

5. Ellie will be training for her new job from next week.

Negative _____

6. Some investment banks are going to be having problems because of bad loans.

Negative _____

7. The candidates will be making many speeches over the next few months. The candidates will be speaking at a public meeting next week.

Negative _____

8. Half an hour from now, the speaker will be presenting current news on Channel 5.

Negative _____

9. The ship will be crossing the channel at 9 o'clock according to the timetable.

Negative _____

10. They will be gradually increasing the productivity so as to gain some profit by the end of the year.

Negative _____

11. Don't come here after 7.30. At 8 o'clock tomorrow we'll be preparing for a very important forensic experiment.

Negative _____

12. We will be discussing the details of the calendar of activities for the students.

Negative _____

13. At this time next year, I will be working in a bank.

Negative _____



Exercise G: Use the future continuous tense of a verb in your answers to each of the question given below:

1. Will you watch the movie tomorrow night?

Answer _____

2. Will it rain at the end of the week?

Answer _____

3. Will your lawyer talk to you next time?

Answer _____

4. How long will the witness give the testimony?

Answer _____

5. Will you listen to the prominent lawyer's defense speech tomorrow?

Answer _____

6. Will you have an important appointment some time tomorrow?

Answer _____

7. Will they attend the lecture in Criminology?

Answer _____

8. Will Jane participate in the preliminary hearing tomorrow morning?

Answer _____

9. Will Jack's parents celebrate his birthday next week?

Answer _____

10. Will you contract an agreement with that well recognized software company soon?

Answer _____

11. Will you negotiate the terms of the contract with your lawyer?

Answer _____

12. Will the jury decide the verdict after a long period of deliberations?

Answer _____

13. Will the Patent Office start issuing permissions to launch inventions?

Answer _____

14. Will the Patent Office also grant licenses for the sale of alcohol?

Answer _____

15. Will licenses impose any rights and duties on the holder?

Answer _____

16. Will law enforcement ensure obedience to the laws in the future?

Answer _____

17. Will jurisprudence allow freedom while enforcing order?

Answer _____



Exercise H: Change the active sentences into the passive ones using the Future Continuous tense pattern:



Sentences can be active or passive. Tenses may also have "active forms" and "passive forms." **In active sentences**, the following form is observed: [Thing doing action + verb + thing receiving action] **In passive sentences**, the following form is observed: [Thing receiving action + be (in required tense) + past participle of verb + by + thing doing action]

Normal sentences:

1. John Freight will be training the students of the Mason City Citizens' Police Academy.

Passive _____

2. The Mason City Police Department and Cerro Gordo County Sheriff's Department will be accepting applications from 13 to 18:30 pm Friday.

Passive _____

3. The chief of police and the sheriff will be selecting participants through an application process.

Passive _____

4. The academy will be providing courses for citizens to learn first-hand about police and sheriff operations and services.

Passive _____

5. The Mason City Police Investigator Jeremy Rydal will be notifying those applicants, who are accepted, by phone.

Passive _____

6. The police officers will be sharing their knowledge about law enforcement functions within the criminal justice system through classroom and hands-on sessions.

Passive _____

7. The academy will be having its meetings at the police department at Municipal Center, 1930 S. Germantown Road, on Thursday evenings from 6 to 9:30 p.m.

Passive _____

8. Participants will be developing a greater understanding of the role of a law enforcement officer and day-to-day operations at the Mason City Police Department.

Passive _____



Exercise I: Change the passive sentences into the active ones using the Future Continuous tense pattern:



The passive construction has the same meaning of the tense as the active construction, and the same adverbs of time are used with the tenses in the active and in the passive. As a rule, the Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous, Future Perfect Continuous, and Future Continuous are not used in the passive, though theoretically they exist.

Strange sentences:

1. The doors of the Bergen County Youth Police Academy will be being opened again for a new class in the summer of 2011.

Active _____

2. Applications for the program will be being accepted from May 6 to May 16 from the students, who enter grades 9-12 and live in Bergen County.

Active _____

3. Also the two week program will be being held at the Bergen County Law and Public Safety Institute in Mahwah from June 27 to July 8.

Active _____

4. The camp will be being run by the Bergen County Prosecutor's Office.

Active _____

5. According to its website, teamwork, committing to achieving goals and respect will be being focused by the program.

Active _____

6. Physical training will be being completed by the students similar to the actual training program run at the police academy.

Active _____

7. The public will be being invited by the Santa Monica Police Department to sign up for its "Citizen Police Academy," a twelve-week program designed to give people an inside look at the challenges its officer's face.

Active _____

8. Greater understanding of law enforcement will be being created by Citizen's Police Academy.

Active _____

9. A lot of information will be being memorized while you prepare to pass your entry test.

Active _____

**Exercise J: Match the terms with their synonyms:**

Terms	Synonyms
1) an accomplice	a) a dissatisfaction
2) to accuse	b) an ill-treatment
3) an acquittal	c) a compensation
4) an alibi	d) a young offender
5) to appeal	e) to discuss
6) an arrest	f) a release
7) a bankruptcy	g) a decision
8) a complaint	h) an assistant
9) damages	i) a carelessness
10) to deliberate	j) an apprehension
11) a delinquent	k) to charge
12) an abuse	l) a runaway
13) a fugitive	m) a defense
14) a judgment	n) to petition
15) a negligence	o) a liquidation

**Exercise K: Match the terms with their antonyms:**

Terms	Synonyms
1) an order	a) a diligence
2) a plaintiff	b) an employment
3) a privilege	c) a disproof
4) an assistance	d) a tolerance
5) a dismissal	e) to invalidate
6) to certify	f) a concealment
7) a violation	g) a disorder
8) a prejudice	h) to abandon
9) to convict	i) a defendant
10) an evidence	j) a hindrance
11) a misdemeanor	k) to release
12) to accomplish	l) a detriment
13) a confession	m) a criminal
14) a victim	n) an obedience
15) a negligence	o) a felony



Exercise L: Examine the text. Substitute the underlined words by the synonymous words from the yellow box given below:

informally	certified	generally	to relate to	to accelerate
considerably	(to) change	misdeeds	extended	designated
another	associated	(to) entitle	analogous	assistance
in most cases	in support of	limited	behavior	authorized
to conclude	to carry out	range	specialists	common

A lawyer is a person learned in the law and a person who is practicing law. Law is the system of rules of conduct¹ established by the sovereign government of a society to correct wrongs,² maintain the stability of political and social authority, and deliver justice. Working as a lawyer involves the practical application of abstract legal theories and knowledge to solve specific individualized problems, or to advance³ the interests of those who hire lawyers to perform⁴ legal services. The role of the lawyer varies significantly⁵ across legal jurisdictions. In practice, legal jurisdictions exercise their right to determine⁶ who is to be recognized as being a lawyer; as a result, the meaning of the term "lawyer" may vary⁷ from place to place. In Australia the word "lawyer" is used to refer to⁸ both barristers and solicitors whether in private practice or practicing as corporate⁹ in-house counsel. In Canada, the word "lawyer" only refers to individuals who have been called to the bar or have qualified¹⁰ as civil law notaries in the province of Quebec. Common law lawyers in Canada may also be known as "barristers and solicitors", but should not be referred to as "attorneys", since that term has a different¹¹ meaning in Canadian usage. However, in Quebec, civil law advocates often call¹² themselves "attorney" and sometimes "barrister and solicitor". In England and Wales, "lawyer" is used loosely¹³ to refer to a broad¹⁴ variety¹⁵ of law-trained persons. It includes practitioners¹⁶ such as barristers, solicitors, legal executives and licensed¹⁷ conveyances; and people who are involved with the law but do not practice it on behalf of¹⁸ individual clients, such as judges, court clerks, and drafters of legislation. In India, the term "lawyer" is often colloquially¹⁹ used, but the official term is "advocate" as prescribed²⁰ under the Advocates Act, 1961. In Scotland, the word "lawyer" refers to a more specific²¹ group of legally trained people. It includes advocates and solicitors. In a generic²² sense, it may also include judges and law-trained support²³ staff. In the United States, the term generally²⁴ refers to attorneys who may practice law; it is never used to refer to patent agents or paralegals. Other nations tend to have comparable²⁵ terms for the concept.



Exercise M: Read the instructions below. Group the compound words from the pool according to the category they belong to:



In English, words, particularly adjectives and nouns, are combined into compound structures in a variety of ways. There are three forms of compound words: 1) *The closed form* (in which the words are merged together), e.g.: firefly, secondhand, softball, childlike, redhead, keyboard, makeup, notebook, etc.; 2) *The hyphenated form*, e.g.: daughter-in-law, master-at-arms, over-the-counter, six-pack, six-year-old, mass-produced, etc.; 3) *The open form*, e.g.: post office, real estate, middle class, full moon, half sister, attorney general, etc.

Compound Words` Pool

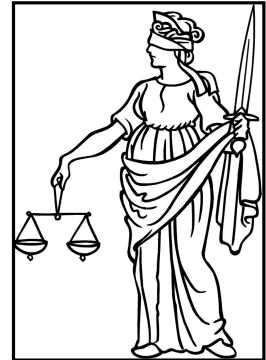
well-respected	aircraft	downhill	up-to-date	timekeeper
championship	daydream	break-in	science fiction	sweetheart
troublemaker	chat-room	airport	friendly-looking	skyscraper
long-distance	earphone	armchair	earthquake	overrule
worldwide	wholesale	bathroom	understanding	credit card
force-feed	spot-check	billboard	monkey wrench	school bus
eyewitness	French fries	brainstorm	part of speech	bus driver
web page	candy cane	breakfast	first aid	sea salt
police officer	ill-gotten	part-time	swimming pool	park bench
counterpart	jack-in-the-	<u>peanut</u>	carry-out	fellowship
copyright	box	<u>butter</u>	drop-out	full moon
citizenship	know-it-all	ice cream	day-to-day	middle class
courthouse	nail-biting	root word	drive-thru	post office
subject-matter	off-campus	car pool	empty-headed	real estate
time-consuming	off-center	ill-timed	eye-catching	well-known
ill-tempered	policeman	small-time	face-off	worthwhile
market-driven	viewpoint	tight-fisted	gang-banger	feedback
time-saving	runaway	tight-knit	gas-fired	off-chance
parking meter	ice skating	chairman	master-at-arms	many-sided
user-friendly	butterfly	roadway	mass-produced	<u>over-the-</u>
walk-through	two-fold	voice-over	brother-in-law	<u>counter</u>

Category	Compound words
The closed form	
The hyphenated form	
The open form	



Exercise N: Underline a compound word in each of the sentences given below. Comment the category which such words belong to:

1. We're searching for a couple of runaways from the young offenders' correctional institution.
2. The police officers are investigating fraud allegations against a well-recognized software company.
3. The announcement that Mr. Dwight was receiving money from the well-known criminals has caused a scandal.
4. We should consider this problem from the viewpoint of the lay citizens.
5. "Active citizenship" is the philosophy that citizens should work towards the betterment of their community to improve life for all citizens.
6. The figures were revealed to the public by retired traffic policeman Peter Nicholson, who still has contacts in the force.
7. To become a unique auto dealer and to increase the response from the potential customers, your custom website should be user-friendly.
8. And I'd be a soap-boxer if I didn't have the spending of my father's ill-gotten gains. (The Valley of the Moon by Jack London)
9. They rumor, that the Defense Secretary employs his wife Gloria Ainsworth as a part-time caseworker and secretarial Assistant.
10. The Prime Minister is to meet his European counterparts to discuss the war against drugs.
11. She doesn't have any understanding of what it takes to be a good manager.
12. Copyright owners have the exclusive statutory right to exercise control over copying and other exploitation of the works for a specific period of time, after which the work is said to enter the public domain.
13. The time and expenses involved in keeping our company up-to-date with all the changes has been worthwhile.
14. Many of the features present in the cars of early James Bond movies are present in mass-produced cars today.
15. The upper middle class tend to go into business or the professions, becoming, for example, lawyers, doctors or accountants.
16. As counsel to the issuer, an \$ 8.8 billion warehouse funding facility backed by real estate related assets.
17. The real vandals are the advertisers who erected these billboards without our permission, often without even planning permission.





It is interesting to know

When Do You Hyphenate Compound Words?

1. *Hyphens* are used to link words and parts of words. They are not as common today as they used to be, but there are three main cases where you should use them: 1) in compound words; 2) to join prefixes to other words; 3) to show word breaks

2. *Hyphens* are used in many compound words to show that the component words have a combined meaning (e.g. a pick-me-up, mother-in-law, good-hearted) or that there

is a relationship between the words that make up the compound (e.g., rock-forming minerals are minerals that form rocks). But you don't need to use them in every type of compound word.

3. *Compound adjectives* are made up of a noun + an adjective, a noun + a participle, or an adjective + a participle. Many compound adjectives should be hyphenated. E.g.: accident-prone; computer-aided; bad-tempered, etc. With compound adjectives formed from the adverb *well* and a *participle* (e.g. well-known), or from a phrase (e.g. up-to-date), you should use a hyphen when the compound comes before the noun, but not when the compound comes after the noun. It's important to use hyphens in compound adjectives describing ages and lengths of time: leaving them out can make the meaning ambiguous.

4. *Use a hyphen* when a compound formed from two nouns is made into a verb, for example: to ice-skate; to spot-check; to court-martial, etc.

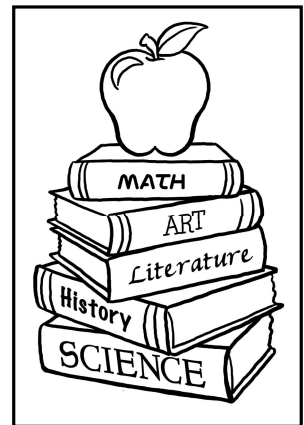
5. *Hyphens* can be used to join a prefix to another word, especially if the prefix ends in a vowel and the other word also begins with one (e.g.: pre-eminent or co-own).

6. *Use a hyphen* to separate a prefix from a name or date, e.g.: post-Aristotelian or pre-1900.

7. *Use a hyphen* to avoid confusion with another word: for example, to distinguish re-cover (= provide something with a new cover) from recover (= get well again).

8. Hyphens are also used to stand for a common second element in all but the last word of a list, e.g.: You may see a yield that is two-, three-, or fourfold.

9. Hyphens can be used to divide words that are not usually hyphenated. They show where a word is to be divided at the end of a line of writing.





Exercise O: Put the following sentences into the passive voice. The agent should be mentioned where necessary. Underline the compound words used in the given sentences:

1. You should proofread your e-mail message before you send it.

Passive _____

2. The policeman interrogated each of us about our activity during the night of the crime.

Passive _____

3. Somebody had stolen my laptop and erased all financial databases from our server computer. It must be qualified as a cybercrime!

Passive _____

4. It is beyond my understanding! The burglars had cut an enormous hole in the steel door of the local post office!

Passive _____

5. The judge ruled that Mr. Craig showed an accident-prone behavior on the road and sentenced him to pay fine in two weeks.

Passive _____

6. The librarian said that they were starting a new friendly-looking web page for customers so as to keep people informed about the new releases.

Passive _____

7. People are spending much more money on different mass-produced technical toys today rather than they have spent just ten years ago.

Passive _____

8. The organizers were planning to exhibit the paintings till the end of the month, until somebody had slashed the well-known picture with a knife.

Passive _____

9. A thief stole my bicycle right from the parking lot and brought it back only when I offered \$20 reward for it.

Passive _____

10. Our work could be effective and time-consuming even in the absence of special regulations. Just remember that no one can do anything unless we ask him or her to do so.

Passive _____

11. We use this courtroom only on special occasions. It is high time to inform everyone about that.

Passive _____



Exercise P: Put the following sentences into the active voice. Where no agent is mentioned one must be supplied. Underline the compound words used in the given sentences:

1. The speed limit should be introduced for this highway the sooner the better so as to reduce the number of the accident-prone incidents.

Active _____

2. The runways are being searched at all the main airports.

Active _____

3. The damaged ship was being towed into harbor when the towline broke.

Active _____

4. The house where the dead man was found is being guarded by two policemen to prevent it from being entered.

Active _____

5. According to information posted by a well-recognized Stock Exchange on dozens of financial billboards, a profit of two million pounds was made in the first six months of the last year by Hewlett Packard.

Active _____

6. The aircraft was put into quarantine and passengers and the crew were landed in emergency.

Active _____

7. All rumors, that our bank had been issuing false credit cards, must have been started by our opponents.

Active _____

8. John was an eyewitness of the car accident, when the vehicle has blown over the cliff and the rescue command has been called for its salvation.

Active _____

9. The referee was being escorted from the football field by a strong police guard for security purposes.

Active _____

10. Traditionally, representatives of the middle-class are engaged in the so-called white-collar professional sectors.

Active _____

11. The many-sided scientific theory about the multiple causes of crime has now been proved to be true, though it has been persistently discarded by many scholars just a few years ago.

Active _____



It is interesting to know

Suffixes are groups of letters attached to the ends of roots, words, and word groups. Suffixes serve a grammatical function. A suffix can indicate what part of speech (noun, verb, adjective, adverb) the word belongs to. Suffixes can also modify and extend meaning. The following suffixes are grouped beneath the grammatical function they perform:

Rubric	Suffix	What it denotes
Noun	-acy, -cy	State or quality (privacy; infancy)
	-age	Activity or result of action (courage)
	-al	Action or result of action (referral)
	-an	Person (partisan)
	-ance, -ence	Action or state or quality or process (independence)
	-ancy, -ency	State or quality or capacity (vacancy; agency)
	-ant, -ent	Agent or smth. that performs the action (dependent)
	-ate	State or office or function (candidate)
	-ation	Action or resulting state (specialization)
	-dom	Place or state of being (wisdom)
	-er, -or	Person or thing that does something (collector)
	-ful	Amount or quantity that fills (mouthful)
	-ian, -an	Related to or one that is (pedestrian; human)
	-ia	names/ diseases (phobia)
	-iatry	Art of healing (psychiatry)
	-ic, -ics	Related to arts and sciences (arithmetic; economics)
	-ice	Act (malice)
	-ing	Material for activity or result of activity (flooring)
	-ion	Condition or action (abduction)
	-ism	Doctrine, belief, action, conduct (formalism)
	-ist	Person or member (criminologist)
	-ite	Product or part (graphite)
	-ity, -ty	State or quality (lucidity; novelty)
	-ive	Condition (native)
	-ment	Condition or result (document)
	-ness	State, condition or quality (kindness)
	-or	Condition or activity (valor)
	-ory	Place for or serves for (territory)
-ship	Status or condition (relationship)	
-ure	Act, condition, process or function (exposure)	

	-y	State, condition, result of activity (society; victory)
Verb	-ate	Cause to be (graduate)
	-ed	Past tense (attained)
	-en	Action (ponder; clamor)
	-ify	Cause (specify)
	-ing	Present participle (depicting)
	-ize	Cause (fantasize)
	-ure	Act or to come to a conclusion by guesswork
Adjective	-able, -ible	Worth or ability (solvable; incredible)
	-al, -ial, -ical	Quality or relation (territorial; categorical)
	-ant, -ent, -ient	Kind of agent or indication (important; dependent)
	-ar, -ary	Resembling or related to (spectacular; unitary)
	-ate	Kind of state (inviolate)
	-ed	Having the quality of (terraced)
	-en	Comparative (brighter)
	-est	Superlative (strongest)
	-ful	Having, giving or marked by (fanciful)
	-ic	Quality or relation (generic)
	-ile	Having the qualities of (projectile)
	-ing	Activity (cohering)
	-ish	Having the character of (newish)
	-ive, -ative, -itive	Having the quality of (cooperative; sensitive)
	-less	without/ missing (motiveless)
	-ous, -eous, -ose, -ious	Having the quality of or relating to (courageous)
-y	Marked by or having (hungry)	
Adverb	-fold	In a manner of/ marked by (fourfold)
	-ly	In the manner of (fluently)
	-ward	In a direction/ manner (homeward)
	-wise	In the manner of/ with regard to (time-wise)

Nouns perform the function of naming. Nouns name persons, places animals or things, as well as groups, ideas and qualities. In a sentence, nouns can be subjects, objects, or appositives. **Verbs** make statements about nouns, ask questions, give commands, or show states of being. Verbs can be active or passive. Verbs also show tense or time of action. **Adjectives** describe or modify nouns. Adjectives tell the reader more about the noun used in the sentence. **Adverbs** describe verbs, adjectives and other adverbs.



Exercise Q: Form as many nouns as possible from the following verbs. Comment the reason you have added particular suffixes:

Verb	Nouns
to forge	
to use	
to act	
to explain	
to dispute	
to arrest	
to challenge	
to hear	
to comply	
to represent	
to justify	
to correspond	
to protect	
to certify	
to punish	
to notify	



Exercise R: Form adjectives and adverbs from the following nouns. Comment the reason you have added particular suffixes:

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
emotion		
person		
truth		
period		
system		
type		
frequency		
fantasy		
romance		
law		
politics		
kindness		
falsification		
independence		
violence		



Exercise S: Complete the chart with the missing parts of speech.
The words contain the same root:

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Adverb
exchangeability			
	offend		
		avoidable	
			stimulatingly
damage			
	finance		
		frequent	
			violably
objective			
	frustrate		



Exercise T: Complete the text with the missing words from the yellow box given below. What parts of speech are they?

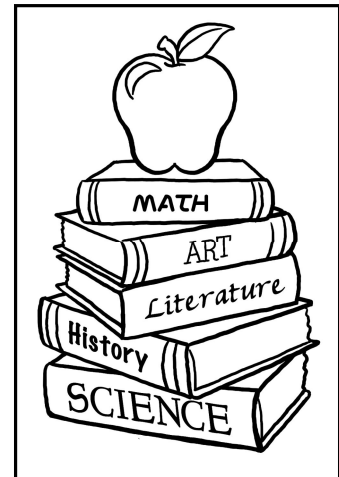
frequently	international	responsibility	date	adopted
original	protection	outbreak	exclusive	literary
progress	granted	has amended	acts	limited

Some forms of intellectual property, such as trademarks, ___¹ back to the ancient times. Comprehensive legal protection for intellectual property did not become common until the 18th century. The American colonies had laws granting patents long before the ___² of the American Revolution in 1775. Soon after the revolution, all but one of the 13 ___³ colonies adopted copyright laws. When the Constitution of the United States was ratified in 1789, it ___⁴ the U.S. Congress the authority to “promote the ___⁵ of science and useful arts, by securing for ___⁶ times, to authors and inventors, the ___⁷ right to their respective writings and discoveries”. Under this power, Congress ___⁸ both patent and copyright laws in 1790, one of its first ___⁹. Congress ___¹⁰ the intellectual property statutes ___¹¹ since then in response to the changes in technology and economics. There are committees in both houses of Congress that have the ___¹² of keeping intellectual property laws up to date. International ___¹³ of intellectual property rights was first addressed in treaties beginning in the late 19th century. For example, the Berne Convention of 1886 protected artistic and ___¹⁴ works among member countries. Since then, many ___¹⁵ treaties have addressed intellectual property rights.



It is interesting to know

Prefixes and suffixes are now groups of letters added to words or to roots to create new words. Prefixes – pre (before) + fix (fasten) = fasten before – are groups of letters placed before words or roots. Prefixes modify or extend the meanings of words and roots. Every prefix has its own meaning. When added to a root word, a prefix changes the meaning of the root word to which it is added. The root word "purpose" means "an aim or a goal one wishes to achieve." The prefix "multi" means "many." The new word "multipurpose" means "designed or used for many purposes." Learning to identify prefixes and knowing their meanings are great ways to expand your vocabulary.



Some Common Prefixes:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples of Words with the Prefix
Re –	again	replay, resend, replace, repaint, reappraise
Hyper –	over	hyperactive, hypersensitive, hyperventilate
Un –	not	unclear, unsure, undecided, unreal, unhappy
Tri –	three	triangle, tricycle, tripod, tricolor, triptych
Pre –	before	prepay, prepackage, predate, precondition
Mis –	wrong	misconduct, misspell, misunderstand, misuse
Sub –	below	subway, substandard, submarine, subsoil
Ante –	before	antecedent, anterior, ante-room, antebellum
Auto –	self	automobile, autonomy, autobiography
Bi –	two	biped, biennial, bicycle, bilingual, bisexual
Contra –	against, opposite	contraceptive, contradict, controversy
Extra –	beyond	extraordinary, extracurricular, extraterrestrial
Im –	not	immoral, impossible, immobilizer, immature
Hypo –	under	hypodermic, hypothermia, hypodynamics
Inter –	between, among	interject, interact, interchange, intervention
Non –	not, negation	nonsense, non-smoker, non-alcoholic
Over –	excessive, above	overwork, overconfident, overburdened
Post –	after	postpone, postmodernism, postscript
Counter	against, opposite	counterpoint, counterweight, counteract
Semi –	half	semicircle, semi-conscious, semiannual
Trans –	across, beyond	transform, transnational, transatlantic



Exercise U: Write the negative form of these words by adding one of the negative prefixes given below:

Choose from: "un-", or "dis-", or "ir-", or "il-", or "in-", or "im-"

Word	Negative form	Word	Negative form
comfortable		appear	
patient		agree	
honest		convenient	
lucky		polite	
formal		legal	
possible		like	
popular		logical	
lock		trust	



Exercise V: Do you know the meanings of different prefixes and when to use the right one? Use multiple-choice options to answer:

1. What does the word "unhurt" mean?
a) hurt badly; b) hurt; c) not hurt
2. If you take away the prefix "im" from "impolite", the root word is "olite".
a) true; b) false; c) not sure
3. If you add the prefix "un" to the word "wrap" what is the correct spelling of the new word?
a) unwrap; b) unwrap; c) unwrap; d) unrap
4. What do you do if you "reread" a legal document?
a) read it again; b) read it for the first time; c) don't read it
5. If you take the prefix "il" away from the word "illegal", what is the root word? **a) llegal; b) legal; c) legall**
6. "Disagree" means "not to agree". **a) true; b) false; c) not sure**
7. If you add the prefix "in" to the root word "formal" what is the correct spelling for the new word?
a) informal; b) iformal; c) ifformal; d) informal
8. How do you spell the word meaning "not possible"?
a) unpossible; b) impossible; c) unpossible; d) ilpossible
9. The term "pre-war" means:
a) before the war; b) after the war; c) neither of these
10. If you wanted to say someone is "not helpful" which word would you use? **a) inhelpful; b) unhelpful; c) imhelpful; d) mishelpful**
11. If you add the prefix "im" to the word "mature" what is the correct

spelling of the new word?

a) immature; b) immature; c) neither of these

12. Is the word "illogical" spelt correctly in this question?

a) yes; b) no; c) not sure

13. If a house is "disused", it is:

a) used a lot; b) used from time to time; c) no longer used

14. The prefix "re" used in the words, "reopen" and "reapply" means:

a) not; b) again; c) sometimes

15. If you "misjudge" someone, you:

a) don't judge them; b) judge them wrongly; c) judge them again

16. Does the word "antenatal" mean "before birth"?

a) yes; b) no; c) not sure

17. To "not approve" means that you:

a) unapprove; b) disapprove; c) imapprove

18. If you add the prefix "ir" to the word "responsible", how do you spell the new word?

a) irresponsible; b) irresponsible; c) irresponsibile

19. If something is "inaccurate", it means that it is "nearly accurate".

a) true; b) false; c) not sure

20. If you "defraud" someone, what do you do to them?

a) take money from them; b) give them money; c) ask for advice

21. Which of these words means "not natural"?

a) innatural; b) abnatural; c) imnatural; d) unnatural

22. If you are "irresponsible" what are you?

a) very responsible; b) quite responsible; c) not responsible

23. If you add the prefix "dis" to the word "satisfy", how do you spell the new word? **a) dissatisfy; b) disattisfy; c) dissatisfy**

24. Which of these prefixes do you add to the word "moral" to mean "not moral"? **a) un; b) in; c) im; d) il**

25. Does the word "antisocial" mean "within society"?

a) yes; b) no; c) not sure

26. If you "interlink" things, what do you do with them?

a) join them together; b) tear them apart; c) leave them as they are

27. Which of these prefixes means "again"? **a) un; b) dis; c) im; d) re**

28. If you "distrust" someone, how do you feel about them?

a) trust them very much; b) quite trust them; c) do not trust them

29. How is the word which means "not proper" spelt?

a) inproper; b) unproper; c) improper; d) disproper



Your Self – Assessment Test: Future Simple/ Continuous

◆ **Exercise 1.** Choose the correct verb tense from the Future Simple and Future Continuous for each sentence:

1. If I see my bank manager, he ___¹ (ask) me for sure about the circumstances of the credit card loss.

a) will be asking; b) will ask

2. I won't be able to talk to you in 15 minutes because our boss ___² (inspect) the fire alarm system at our plant and I must accompany him.

a) will be inspecting; b) will inspect

3. If we go shopping today, we ___³ (get) 10% discount on most of our purchases. **a) will be getting; b) will get**

4. I decided, that I ___⁴ (talk) to my boss about the possible career promotion. **a) will talk b) will be talking**

5. This time tomorrow I ___⁵ (cross-examine) the witnesses in the courtroom. **a) will cross-examine; b) will be cross-examining**

6. I ___⁶ (see) you at 7 pm, if nothing interferes into our plans.

a) will be seeing; b) will see

7. Many victims ___⁷ (receive) money awards which are much lower than they expect. **a) will be receiving; b) will receive**

8. My family oddly decided that I ___⁸ (become) a good notary.

a) will be becoming b) will become

9. I ___⁹ (travel) all over the Germany for the next month.

a) will travel b) will be traveling

10. I'm really tired today, so I ___¹⁰ (start) preparing my report tomorrow.

a) will start; b) will be starting

11. FBI reported recently, that they ___¹¹ (provide) a series of operations against fraudulent cyberspace offences from May to June, 2011.

a) will be providing; b) will provide

12. The first day of the term will be horrible, for everybody ___¹² (talk) about their holidays and ___¹³ (show) photographs of marvelous foreign beaches, and as I haven't been anywhere I ___¹⁴ (feel) terribly out of it.

a) will be talking; b) will talk

a) will be showing; b) will show

a) will be feeling; b) will feel

13. Tomorrow at nine they ___¹⁵ (discuss) the terms of the contract.

a) will be discussing; b) will discuss

◆ **Exercise 2.** Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Simple tense. Choose whether to use *will* or *going to* construction:

1. Danny ___¹ (spend) a lot of money if he goes to England.
2. Look! That plane is flying towards the airport. It ___² (land) in the extreme conditions of poor visibility.
3. I'm sorry you've decided to leave the company. I ___³ (miss) you when you change your job.
4. He ___⁴ (fail) to defend his client unless he works harder and finds more proofs of his innocence.
5. Jack ___⁵ (meet) the strikers in front of the office in ten minutes to listen to their demands.
6. George phoned while you were out. He ___⁶ (phone) back later this evening.
7. Why are you putting on your coat? You really ___⁷ (leave) now?
8. I think, I surely ___⁸ (visit) the Eiffel Tower when I go to Paris.
9. We ___⁹ (stay) at home if it rains. We ___¹⁰ (not/ get) all wet again.
10. I've decided to appeal the decision of the court. We ___¹¹ (appeal) to the court of higher instance this time.
11. My client ___¹² (face) serious charges of intentional murder attempt soon. We ___¹³ (do) our best to prove he is innocent.
12. I ___¹⁴ (reach) London next weekend for my sister's wedding.
13. It's obvious, lots of accidents ___¹⁵ (happen) in that nasty weather.
14. I'm late due to the traffic jams, but I ___¹⁶ (try) to come on time tomorrow.
15. Mr. Wong ___¹⁷ (visit) the forensic lab on Wednesday next week so as to get acquainted with the results of the DNA test.
16. According to Billy Meier, increased environmental destruction, famine and even the speeding up of the planet's rotation only ___¹⁸ (intensify) dramatically by the year 2012.
17. International soldiers ___¹⁹ (be/ need) in Afghanistan until at least 2012, but troop levels could start dropping by then, the commander of coalition forces said Wednesday.
18. Within five years, the community of Innuksuac ___²⁰ (use) its water and wind to produce heat and light and end its dependence on diesel fuel to generate electrical power.
19. The government ___²¹ (join) its efforts with a private foundation to help Quebecers develop healthier lifestyles and lower their obesity levels.

◆ **Exercise 3.** Choose the correct ending to create new words:

Verb	The beginning	Suffixes	Noun
confuse	confu –	-sion, -cian, -tion	
opposite	opposi –	-sion, -cian, -tion	
confess	confes –	-sion, -cian, -tion	
elect	elec –	-sion, -cian, -tion	
magic	magi –	-sion, -cian, -tion	
describe	descrip –	-sion, -cian, -tion	
collide	colli –	-sion, -cian, -tion	
extend	exten –	-sion, -cian, -tion	
explode	explor –	-sion, -cian, -tion	
beauty	beauti –	-sion, -cian, -tion	

◆ **Exercise 4.** Put the word in brackets into the correct form. You will have to use prefixes and/or suffixes. Comment the part of speech you've gotten as a result of your transformations:

1. He was sitting ____¹ (comfort) in his seat on the train.
2. The team that he supported was able to win the ____² (champion).
3. You need to be a highly trained ____³ (economy) to understand this report.
4. You need a sort of ____⁴ (combine) of ____⁵ (motivate), ____⁶ (organize) and ____⁷ (revise) to achieve ____⁸ (vision) results in your English study.
5. No wonder that he failed to defend his client. He was acting in a very ____⁹ (child) way!
6. He's lost his wallet again. I don't know where he has ____¹⁰ (place) it this time.
7. The question of ____¹¹ (like) of ____¹² (confuse) is the signal test to determine if a trademark infringement claim is valid.
8. I think you should to talk to your boss about your career ____¹³ (promote). You seem to be ____¹⁴ (qualify) for the position you are holding at the moment.
9. The road was too narrow, so they had to ____¹⁵ (wide) it for security purposes.
10. He was accused of ____¹⁶ (false) of documents and charged with forgery.
11. I try not to buy cheap electric appliances because it's ____¹⁷ (practice).
12. The rate of ____¹⁸ (not/ employ) in Brazil has been rising steadily in recent years due to ____¹⁹ (efficient) measures of the government.

◆ **Exercise 5.** Give synonyms to the following expressions:

Expression	Synonym	Expression	Synonym
a bad lawyer		husband and wife	
a final verdict		a divorce case	
to enact laws		a personal inquiry	
to read the ruling		a small book	
to sentence to death		to interview a suspect	
to disclose secrets		to apprehend a thief	
inmates of a jail		to commit larceny	
to launch the case		to benefit a lot	
to revise the bill		to merge the funds	
to nullify the deed		to debate the terms	

◆ **Exercise 6.** Give antonyms to the following expressions:

Expression	Antonym	Expression	Antonym
closing arguments		to adopt the rule	
a senior partner		the first reading	
due diligence		a law-abiding citizen	
to hide the details		to gain profit	
to obey the law		to convict as guilty	
an absence of mind		to win the battle	
a failure to achieve		to start the suit	
employment issues		to seek damages	
an honest trade		to defend a criminal	
a fair trial		to forget everything	

◆ **Exercise 7.** Form nouns from these verbs:

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
produce		enter	
agree		explore	
sign		admit	
disturb		behave	
arrive		entertain	
introduce		resign	
advertise		arrange	
apologize		communicate	

◆ **Exercise 8.** Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Simple or Future Continuous tense-form. Comment the reasons of the usage:

1. At three o'clock tomorrow, Jane ___¹ (work) in her office.
2. If I have any spare time tonight I ___² (go) to the cinema with pleasure.
3. He ___³ (study) at the library tonight, so he will not see Jennifer when she arrives.
4. Paula is nervously drinking her tea as she is waiting for Charles. She wonders if he ___⁴ (be) late as usual. She ___⁵ wait until the clock strikes five and then she ___⁶ (call) him in case he has forgotten about the arrangement.
5. I ___⁷ (tell) him about the recent hackers attempts in the Internet if I see him tomorrow.
6. When my train arrives, my friends ___⁸ (wait) on the platform.
7. If you miss this train, you ___ (be) late for your work again. Your manager ___⁹ (surely/ reprimand) you this time.
8. Changes in the total population and changes in the age distribution ___¹⁰ (affect) both the total demand for goods and services and the composition of that demand.
9. I've got a new job, so this time next month I ___¹¹ (work) in a well-recognized law firm.
10. The increase in price usually means that production ___¹² (become) more profitable.
11. Anyone ___¹³ (wait) for her when her plane arrives tonight?
12. When he turns to the east, the patrol ___¹⁴ (search) in vain the area where they lost him.
13. The large scale transfer of ownership of industry from the public sector to the private sector ___¹⁵ (lead) to an important increase in the individual ownership of shares.
14. The large-scale employment of computer technology ___¹⁶ (have) a dramatic effect on the work of the Stock Exchange all over the world.
15. They ___¹⁷ (work) at the forensic laboratory all day tomorrow, because Scotland Yard provides a series of important investigations of repeat murders in metropolitan area.
16. Unfair competition to the detriment of member countries ___¹⁸ (cause) unstable market conditions for fair trade and cooperation.
17. When population is growing fast, the proportion of the people in the younger age ___¹⁹ (relatively/ increase).

◆ Exercise 9. Put these sentences below into a negative form:

1. Their unpaid debts will reach an unacceptable level soon.
2. The government will pay increasing attention to the role of small businesses in the economy this year to stabilize the needs of the growing market. They say, the turnover will increase by 5 per cent as a result.
3. She will be working on her thesis for the next three years.
4. All enterprises in a free-market economy will be involving a high degree of risk while they provide large-scale international transactions.
5. The large industrialized countries will be greatly accounting for a large proportion of international trade in the context of globalization.
6. The distribution of industry will become a major feature of government economic policy this fiscal year.
7. They will be starting a new sales campaign in the second half of this year to promote their technologies on the Chinese market.
8. The information you provide will help us promote and sell your software product more effectively.
9. We will never provide personally identifiable information about you to third parties without your consent or unless we are required to do so by law.

◆ Exercise 10. Put these sentences below into an interrogative form:

1. We will only use personal information you provide us according to the terms outlined in this document.
2. We will send to our registered widget administrators from time to time service related announcements.
3. We will be further exploring the possible relationship between capacity and expected output and the impact of costs on actual output changes.
4. If our students learn the first law of supply and demand, then they will automatically associate an increase in price with a fall in the quantity demanded and vice versa.
5. In addition, the University will continue to have graduate students working with them on research projects.
6. Our organization, including our affiliates, will be delivering services in four professional areas: audit, tax, consulting, and legal advisory services.
7. He will be working for ABC when the merger takes place.
8. Economic conditions will be changing all the time through the year.
9. The drift of the population and employment to the suburbs will be going on for a long time in the nearest future.



◆ **Exercise 1.** Fill in each blank space with the correct future verb tense from the multiple choice options (simple future, future continuous):

1. Mr. Glyndon ___¹ (work) as the Chairman of this Company for the next two years at least.

¹**a) will be working; b) will work**

2. Cyber-security expert of Secure Command said that carbon traders in Europe ___² launch a new kind of phishing scam soon which we're all supposed to watch out for. The hackers ___³ (send) an official-looking email thus they ___⁴ (instruct) traders to re-register their online credentials. They ___⁵ (then/ log) into the carbon trading site and ___⁶ (transfer) those credits to their own account. The cyber-crooks ___⁷ (then/ pose) as traders and ___ (resell) the credits.

²**a) will be launching; b) will launch** ³**a) will be sending; b) will send**

⁴**a) will be instructing; b) will instruct** ⁵**a) will be logging; b) will log**

⁶**a) will be transferring; b) will transfer** ⁷**a) will be posing; b) will pose**

3. Most people in Britain ___⁸ (be/ subject) to an endless bombardment of advertisements on television just after Christmas inviting them to book for their summer holiday. The adverts ___⁹ (constantly/ tell) viewers that if they book early, they ___¹⁰ (save) enormous amounts of money. There is a little voice at the back of peoples' minds at such moments, that ___¹¹ (suggest) them that there ___¹² (be) much higher bargains if they wait until the last minute. ⁸**a) will be being subjected; b) will be subjected**

⁹**a) will be telling; b) will tell** ¹⁰**a) will be saving; b) will save**

¹¹**a) will be suggesting; b) will suggest** ¹²**a) will be being; b) will be**

4. The huge numbers of Britons ___¹³ (support) an anti-immigration English nationalist party if it is not associated with violence and fascist imagery, according to the largest survey into identity and extremism in the UK. ¹³**a) will be supporting; b) will support**

5. When you make a mistake and take your eyes off the road for more than 1.5 seconds, that ___¹⁴ (immediately/ create) the danger zone, according to technology experts at Ford automobile company.

¹⁴**a) will be creating; b) will create**

6. Given that Americans are addicted to Web access and tech toys, it ___¹⁵ (never/ work) to simply ban the usage of cell phones while driving.

¹⁵**a) will be working; b) will work**

◆ **Exercise 2.** Put the word in brackets into the correct verb form. Choose between Future Simple and Future Continuous:

1. The 21st century is the current century of the Anno Domini era or the Common Era in accordance with the Gregorian calendar. It began on January 1, 2001 and ___¹ (end) on December 31, 2100.
2. According to Bill Moore, by 2100 racism ___² (no/ longer/ be) a significant phenomenon in most countries of the world.
3. Many IT security executives believe that a significant risk of a major IT security breach at their institution ___³ (only/ grow) in the next year or two. As a result, business executives ___⁴ (have) to engage much more proactively on IT security in order to manage security risks without allowing their companies to grind to a halt.
4. Greg Day, McAfee's director of security and strategy says that while attacks on mobile phones are not new, they ___⁵ (steadily/ grow) in future.
5. The call by William Hague, UK foreign secretary, on Friday for an international agreement to set rules that ___⁶ (protect) countries from "the darker side of cyberspace" underlined the speed with which cyber security is climbing up the political agenda.
6. The Nuclear industry ___⁷ (continue) to provide a significant proportion of the UK energy needs over the next ten years and this percentage ___⁸ (only/ increase) as new nuclear power stations come on stream at the end of this decade and beyond.
7. Google ___⁹ (further/ develop) additional security features to its free e-mail service, Gmail. One of the new upcoming features ___¹⁰ (ask) users to type a six-digit code after an account holder's Google password is keyed in.
8. The two-step login method ___¹¹ (ensure) that hackers and imposters are prevented from breaking into e-mail accounts. Moreover, the new six digit code ___¹² (be/ send) to the mobile phones of people.
9. This extra protective measure ___¹³ (initially/ be/ offer) to government agencies and companies who subscribe to email and other office applications by Google. This feature ___¹⁴ (also/ be/ stretch) to schools using Gmail services. General people ___¹⁵ (use) the security code in few months' time until the new technological wonder is invented.
10. Sheriff Allen says even though everything with this incident points to an accidental shooting, the case ___¹⁶ (still/ be/ turn) over to the District Attorney's Office and the Department of Social Services for further review. An 11-year-old girl is dead after her brother accidentally shot her.

◆ **Exercise 3.** Link two parts of the sentence together. Mind Future Simple/ Future Continuous tense. Comment the usage needs:

1st part of the sentence	2nd part of the sentence
1) Toxicology test will be performed on the victims and	a) denial of service attacks will be the simplest to carry out.
2) Federal railroad officials will be collecting evidence from the scene and checking maintenance records to prove	b) but some plausible outcomes are that Lane can return to school on probation, or be expelled.
3) The coalition will provide the research and actions to fight legislative provisions	c) we'll include a satellite navigation system.
4) By joining the coalition, you will be sending a statement to Congress	d) he will be testifying before a Grand Jury in Annapolis, MD.
5) When we consider criminal threats to information systems	e) because I will be conducting a lecture to the students.
6) Almost every type of crime in the physical world	f) that we won't let them undo our protections.
7) Most wireless clients will simply choose any available wireless network	g) it will install itself as a driver and will corrupt your program logic unit.
8) The Stuxnet Windows Worm will not actually affect your computer adversely	h) the results will be available in two days from now.
9) In actuality, the Stuxnet Windows Worm is designed in such a way	i) when their preferred network is unavailable.
10) The school's decision will not be released due to the students' confidential rights,	j) she will be entering highly sensitive financial data into our corporate server computer.
11) The information security industry is changing and as more and more crime is committed online,	k) that restrict agencies from doing their work to protect public and federal safeguards.
12) If it finds one,	l) a final statement later.
13) If you do decide to buy this car model, sir,	m) that it will actually look for a program logic unit.
14) I will not be going to the conference on Abuse next Tuesday at this time,	n) will probably have an online, computer-based counterpart soon.
15) At three o'clock tomorrow	o) even if it enters your computer.
16) You will be teaching adult ESL students tomorrow from 11 to 13 am,	p) that the injured driver can't see the train cars in the dark.
17) Mrs. Colleen will be working from 9am to 5pm tomorrow,	q) the leading security software vendors will have to adjust.
18) The Government will be making	r) so please don't be late.

◆ **Exercise 4.** Examine the text given below. Rewrite it using the words [from the box below] which are the synonyms to the underlined words:

pathway	incidents	carry off	designers	prearranged
paid in advance	attention	concept	containers	cost
employment	ticket	to secure	possibility	drive

These computer-controlled Pods will take you wherever you want along a fixed route, whenever you want to go. For the price of one person's bus fare, several people can ride at speeds of up to 25mph, with fences and elevated sections used to guard against accidents. There will be little, if any, wait for use of the cabs, which will leave from stations and will be accessed by pre-paid smartcards. The cabs, which will travel on a 1.5 m-wide track, will use 75% less energy per passenger than a car and 50% less than a bus. Will it ever happen? There's a good chance it will. Testing has taken place in Cardiff, where developers hope to have 160 driverless cabs running by 2016. "We have had a lot of interest from elsewhere in the country," says ULTra chief executive Martin Lawson. He says Corby and Daventry are both looking at the idea, so as Heathrow and East Midlands airports are.

◆ **Exercise 5.** Give negative and interrogative forms of the following sentences used in Future Simple or Future Continuous tense forms:

1. What we will see in the next 50 years is the transition from an oil-dependent society, new medicine, the first steps in the development of artificial intelligence, continued exploration of space, more people to die from AIDS, hopefully a better state for the poor people in the world, challenges in the climate change, and new inventions that make life a little easier and entertaining for some.
2. According to the Ministry of Health and Welfare in South Korea, and the United Nations, South Korea will have the highest proportion of senior citizens in the world by year 2050.
3. According to United Nations' World Population Prospects 2004 Revision, the world's population will reach 9.1 billion by 2050, with India being the most populous nation.
4. Future mobile phones may soon have all the features of a computer and will keep people within reach and up-to-date with current events



Your Final Evaluation Test

◆ Exercise 1: a) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense-forms:

John has always traveled a lot. In fact, he ___¹ (be) only two years old when he first ___² (fly) to the US. His mother ___³ (be) Italian and his father ___⁴ (be) American. John ___⁵ (be) born in France, but his parents had met in Cologne, Germany after they had been living there for five years. They ___⁶ (meet) one day while John's father ___⁷ (read) a book in the library and his mother ___⁸ (sit down) beside him. Anyway, John ___⁹ (travel) a lot because his parents also ___¹⁰ (travel) a lot. As a matter of fact, John ___¹¹ (visit) his parents in France at the moment. He ___¹² (live) in New York now, but has been visiting his parents for the past few weeks. He really ___¹³ (enjoy) living in New York, but he also ___¹⁴ (love) coming to visit his parents at least once a year. This year he has flown over 50,000 miles for his job. He ___¹⁵ (work) for Jackson & Co. He ___¹⁶ (be) pretty sure that he ___¹⁷ (work) for them next year as well. His job ___¹⁸ (require) a lot of travel. In fact, by the end of this year, he will have traveled over 120,000 miles! His next journey ___¹⁹ (be) to Australia. He really ___²⁰ (not/ like) going to Australia because it is so far. This time he ___²¹ (fly) from Paris after a meeting with the company's French partner. He ___²² (sit) for over 18 hours at the airport and on the airplane until his plane ___²³ (arrive)! John ___²⁴ (talk) with his parents earlier this evening when his girlfriend from New York ___²⁵ (telephone) to let him know that Jackson & Co. had decided to merge with a company in Australia. The two companies ___²⁶ (constantly/ negotiate) the past month or so, so it ___²⁷ (really/ not/ be) much of a surprise. Of course, this ___²⁸ (mean) that John ___²⁹ (have) to catch the next plane back to New York. He ___³⁰ (meet) with his boss at this time tomorrow.

b) Read the completed text again. Underline all verb forms used in this text. Comment the reasons of the usage of the tenses in this text. _____

c) Put *yes/ no and Wh questions* to each of the sentences from the text.

d) How many personal nouns were used in the text? _____

e) How many countable nouns were used in the text? _____

f) What is the total number of nouns used in this text? _____

g) How many adverbs were used in the text? _____

h) How many adjectives were used in the text? _____

i) How many conjunctions were used in the text? _____

j) How many verbs were used in the text? _____

◆ **Exercise 2.** a) Fill in the blank spaces with the correct verb tense:

1. Police ____¹ (look) for the suspect in an armed robbery of the Subway restaurant in the Peachtree Plaza shopping center Thursday night in Fort Mill. **a) is looking; b) are looking; c) will be looking; d) looked**

2. According to a police report, one of the three employees in the restaurant ____² (say) a black male approximately five feet, seven-inches tall and weighing about 210 pounds, ____³ (enter) through the front door at around 7:34 p.m. asking for money to be placed in a bag.

a) was saying; b) said; c) will be saying; d) says

a) was entering; b) will be entering; c) will enter; d) entered

3. Witnesses ____⁴ (tell) police the suspect then ____⁵ (place) a small silver pistol on the counter and an employee ____⁶ (put) an unspecified amount of money from the cash register into the bag.

a) were telling; b) are telling; c) told; d) will tell

a) placed; b) was placing; c) will be placing; d) was placed

a) was putting; b) was put; c) put; d) will put

4. After taking the money, the suspect ____⁷ (attempt) to leave through the back door, but it ____⁸ (be/ lock).

a) is attempting; b) will attempt; c) was attempting; d) attempted

a) is locked; b) will be locked; c) was locked; d) were locked

5. He then ____⁹ (flee) out of the front door in an unknown direction.

a) was fled; b) will be fled; c) fled; d) will flee

6. One of the employees ____¹⁰ (push) the restaurant's silent alarm as the suspect ____¹¹ (leave).

a) pushed; b) was pushed; c) was pushing; d) will be pushing

a) is leaving; b) left; c) was leaving; d) will be leaving

7. The crime ____¹² (capture) on video surveillance, according to the report.

a) will be captured; b) captured; c) is being captured; d) was captured

8. The suspect ____¹³ (wear) a black "do rag," large diamond earrings, a white tank top, a black and yellow NASCAR type jacket with a Cingular logo on the back, baggy blue jeans, dark tennis shoes, was clean shaven and ____¹⁴ (not/ wear) a mask or gloves.

a) will be wearing; b) was wearing; c) wore; d) is wearing

a) doesn't wear; b) don't wear; c) will not wear; d) didn't wear

9. Last summer, Fort Mill police ____¹⁵ (arrest) a man who was charged with four burglaries at the Peachtree Plaza Subway.

a) arrested; b) will arrest; c) was arresting; d) will be arresting

b) Read the above given article one more time. Be sure you have understood

the plot. Answer some questions about the story:

1. Who are police looking for?
2. What crime was the person suspected in?
3. Where did the crime take place?
4. What were the circumstances of the crime?
5. How did the suspect look like?
6. Did he bear any offensive weapons?
7. Did the offender injure anyone?
8. What did the offender attempt to do?
9. Has the offender completed the crime?
10. What was the catch of the criminal?
11. Who called the police?
12. When did the police arrive?
13. What were the evidences of the crime? Did the criminal leave any traces of his presence on the scene of a crime?
14. Were there any identifiable details in the offender's appearance which could help the police to catch the criminal?
15. Has the offender been finally caught?
16. Who was caught for burglary by the police last summer?
17. Do you think the arrested person is the one who is suspected?

◆ **Exercise 3.** Read and analyze the text given below:

Three Columbia men were killed Friday night after fleeing a traffic stop and later hitting a tree, Columbia police reported Saturday. Stanley Gilmore, 30, and Everett Washington, 55, both of Tree Street, died at the scene, Richland County Coroner Gary Watts said Saturday. A Columbia police officer stopped the late-model Mercury Grand Marquis around 10:15 p.m. after the car ran a stop sign at Live Oak Street and South Kilbourne Road in the Rosewood neighborhood, according to police reports. As the officer was conducting the traffic stop, the vehicle sped off, heading onto South Prospect Street, according to police. The officer began searching along South Prospect, where a witness reported seeing the car traveling at a high rate of speed toward Riviera Road. Shortly after backup units arrived and headed in that direction, the crash scene was found, in the 3700 block of Riviera Road, police said. Toxicology test will be performed on the victims, Watts said. Results were not available Saturday. The S.C. Highway Patrol is investigating the case.



Answers and Solutions to the exercises and tasks
which may cause questions or confusion

p. 9 Ex. A: 1- x; 2-a; 3-a; 4-a; 5-the; 6-the; 7-a; 8-x; 9-the; 10-x; 11-x; 12-the; 13-x; 14-the; 15-the; 16-a; 17- the; 18-x; 19-the; 20-x; 21-x; 22-the; 23-a; 24-x; 25-x; 26-x; 27-x; 28-the; 29-the; 30-the; 31-x; 32-the; 33-x; 34-the; 35-a; 36-a; 37-an; 38-x; 39-the; 40-x; 41-the; 42-x; 43-x; 44-the; 45-the; 46-the; 47-x; 48-x; 49-the; 50-x; 51-the; 52-the; 53-the; 54-x; 55-x; 56-x; 57-x; 58-an; 59-x; 60-x; 61-x.

p.10 Ex. B: 1- the; 2-x; 3-the; 4-the; 5-the; 6-x; 7-x; 8-x; 9-x; 10-x; 11-x; 12-the; 13-the; 14-x; 15-x; 16-the; 17-x; 18-the; 19-the; 20-the; 21-the; 22-the; 23-x; 24-x; 25-x; 26-x; 27-x; 28-x; 29-x.

p. 10-12 Ex. C: 1-x; 2-the; 3-x; 4-x; 5-the; 6-x; 7-the; 8-x; 9-the; 10-x; 11-the; 12-x; 13-x; 14-x; 15- the; 16- the; 17- the; 18-the; 19-x; 20-the; 21-the; 22-x; 23-x; 24-the; 25-the; 26-x; 27-x; 28-x; 29-30-x; 31-x; 32-x; 33-x; 34-x; 35-x; 36-the; 37-x; 38-x; 39-the; 40-x; 41-x; 42-x; 43-x; 44-x; 45-x; 46-the; 47-the; 48-the; 49-the; 50-x; 51-the; 52-the; 53-x; 54-the; 55-the; 56-the; 57-x; 58-x.

p. 12-13 Ex. D

Nº	Country	Capital city	Adjective	Nationality
1	Germany	Berlin	German	A German
2	France	Paris	French	A French
3	Italy	Rome	Italian	An Italian
4	Belgium	Brussels	Belgian	A Belgian
5	Netherlands/ Holland	Amsterdam/ The Hague	Dutch	A Dutchmen
6	Luxemburg	Luxembourg	Luxembourgian	A Luxembourgger
7	United Kingdom	London	British	A Briton
8	Denmark	Copenhagen	Danish	A Dane
9	Ireland	Dublin	Irish	An Irishman
10	Greece	Athens	Greek	A Greek
11	Portugal	Lisbon	Portuguese	A Portuguese
12	Spain	Madrid	Spanish	A Spaniard
13	Austria	Vienna	Austrian	An Austrian
14	Finland	Helsinki	Finnish	A Finn
15	Sweden	Stockholm	Swedish	A Swedes
16	Poland	Warsaw	Polish	A Pole
17	Czech Republic	Prague	Czech	A Czech
18	Hungary	Budapest	Hungarian	A Hungarian
19	Slovakia	Bratislava	Slovak	A Slovak
20	Lithuania	Vilnius	Lithuanian	A Lithuanian
21	Latvia	Riga	Latvian	A Latvian
22	Estonia	Tallinn	Estonian	An Estonian
23	Slovenia	Ljubljana	Slovenian	A Slovene
24	Malta	Valletta	Maltese	A Maltese
25	Cyprus	Nicosia	Cypriot	A Cypriot
26	Turkey (candidate)	Ankara	Turkish	A Turk
27	Bulgaria	Sofia	Bulgarian	A Bulgarian
28	Romania	Bucharest	Romanian	A Romanian

p. 13-14 Ex. E:

№	Category	Notions	the	zero
1	Ships	Titanic; Argo; Calypso; Kon-Tiki; Mayflower; Nautilus	√	
2	Parks, Zoos	Luna Park; Central Park; El Retiro Park; Hyde Park; Great Smoky Mountains National Park		√
3	Continents, states and most countries	India; Europe; China; Africa; Asia; Texas; Florida; Croatia; New York State; Brazil; Guinea-Bissau; Greenland; Michigan; New Zealand; Punjab; Lesotho; northeast Burma; Czechia		√
4	Countries (names include unions or plurals)	United Arab Emirates; United Kingdom; United States; Netherlands; Russian Federation; Philippines; West Indies Federation; Dominican Republic; Czech Republic	√	
5	Towns, cities and villages	Melbourne; Mumbai; Cambridge; Volgograd; Yerevan; Los Angeles; Riyadh; New York City; Acapulco; Vancouver; West Palm Beach; Kensington; Oxfordshire; Palermo; Inner Harbor		√
6	Most streets, squares in towns and cities	Pennsylvania Avenue; Broadway; Tottenham; Court Road; Pratt Street; Times Square		√
7	Airports, train and bus stations, underground or subway stations	Paris Orly; Sheremetyevo; Paris De Gaulle; London Heathrow; British Museum station; Domodedovo; London-Gatwick; National Railway Company of Belgium		√
8	Churches and cathedrals	St. Paul Cathedral; Christian Church		√
9	Geographical features/ geographical regions	Cape of Good Hope; Grand Canyon; Hudson Bay; Gulf of Mexico; Middle East; Far East	√	
10	Lakes, islands, and volcanoes	Baikal; Lake Winnipeg; Issyk-Kul; Tasmania; Seychelles; Mount Etna; Guadeloupe; Titicaca; Bodensee; Mallorca; New Zealand; Antigua and Barbuda; Ashmore and Cartier Islands; Mauna Kea (Hawaii)		√
11	Mountains	Mont Blanc; Moscow Peak; Kilimanjaro; Mount Everest; Mount Elbrus		√
12	Mountain ranges or groups, island groups, deserts	Himalayas; Pamirs; Southern Ural Mountains; Scottish Highlands; Pyrenees; Cheviot Hills; Canary Islands; Hawaiian Islands; Andes; Alps; Sahara; Channel Islands; Ural Mountains; Appalachians	√	
13	Hotels	Sheraton; Hilton; Holiday Inn; Ritz; Marriott; Ritz-Carlton New York	√	
14	Rivers, seas and oceans	Nile; Caspian Sea; Indian Ocean; North Sea; Pacific Ocean; Sea of Azov; Caribbean Sea; Thames; Danube; Red Sea; Mississippi; Baltic Sea; Orinoco	√	
15	Cinemas, theatres, museums	Baltimore Museum of Art; Sydney Opera House; Madame Tussauds in London, UK; Miami Art Museum; Harbor Place Amphitheater	√	

p. 14-15 Ex. F: 1-a; 2-an; 3-the; 4-the; 5-a; 6- the; 7-x; 8- an; 9-an; 10-x; 11-the;

12-x; 13-a; 14-the; 15-the; 16-the; 17-the; 18-a; 19- the; 20-x; 21-a; 22-a; 23-the; 24-a; 25-the; 26- the; 27-the; 28-a; 29-x; 30-a; 31-the; 32-the; 33-the; 34-a; 35-the; 36-a; 37-the; 38-the; 39-the; 40-x; 41-x; 42-the; 43-the; 44-a; 45-an; 46-a; 47-the; 48-the; 49-the; 50-the; 51-the; 52- the; 53- a; 54- the; 55- the; 56- the; 57- a.

p. 15-16 Ex.G: 1-b(1) c(2); 2-d(3); 3-b(4);c(5); b(6); 4-d (7);d (8);a(9); 5-c(10); a(11); 6-d (12);- c(13);7-d(14)

p.16-17 Ex. H: 1) a) -) a) a) a) -) -) a); 2) a) a) -) -) -); 3) the) -) -) -); 4) -) -) a); 5) -) the) -) -) -) -) -) -) 6) -) -) -) -) the) a) the); 7) -) the) -) a) the); 8) -) -) -) the) -) the); 9) -) -) a) the); 10) -) -) -) the) -); 11) the) a); 12) the) a) the) the) a) a) -) -) -)

p. 23 Ex. D: 1-is; 2-are; 3- delivers; 4- come in and take; 5-is; were; 6-is; 7-are; 8-has; 9-has; 10-are; 11-have; 12- have; 13-are

p. 25 Ex. F: 1-childhood; 2- membership; 3-friendship; 4-friendliness; 5- leadership; 6-neighborhood; 7- kingdom; 8- motherhood; 9- manhood; 10- mankind; 11- partnership;12- sweetness.

p. 30 Ex. 3: 1- the; 2-x; 3-x; 4-x; 5-the; 6-the; 7-x; 8-the; 9-x; 10-the; 11-the; 12-the; 13-the; 14- the; 15- the; 16- a; 17-x; 18-x; 19- the; 20- the; 21-x; 22-x; 23-x; 24- the; 25-x; 26-the; 27-x; 28-the; 29- a; 30-x; 31-x; 32-x; 33- the; 34- the; 35- a; 36- a; 37-x; 38- the; 39-x; 40-x; 41- the; 42- the; 43-x; 44-the; 45- a; 46- the; 47-x; 48- the; 49- the; 50- the; 51- the; 52- the; 53-the; 54-the; 55-x; 56- the; 57- the; 58- the; 59-the; 60-the; 61- a; 62-the; 63- x; 64-x; 65- x; 66-a; 67- the; 68- the; 69- an; 70-x; 71-the; 72-x; 73-the; 74-x; 75- x; 76-a; 77-x; 78- the.

p. 32 Ex.1: 1- the; 2- the; 3-x; 4-x; 5- the; 6-x; 7-x; 8- the; 9-x; 10- x; 11-x; 12-x; 13-x; 14-x; 15-the; 16-the; 17-x; 18-a; 19-x; 20-the; 21-a; 22-x; 23- x; 24- a; 25- x; 26-x; 27-x; 28-x; 29- the; 30- a; 31-a; 32-x; 33-x; 34- a; 35-x; 36- the; 37-x; 38-x; 39-x; 40-x; 41-x; 42- x; 43-the; 44-a; 45- the; 46-the; 47- the; 48- the; 49- x; 50-x; 51-the; 52-x; 53-x; 54- a; 55- the; 56-x; 57- the; 58-x; 59- the; 60-x; 61- x; 62- the

p. 32-33 Ex.2: 1-the; the; the; 2-x; x; 3-a; the; the; 4-an; 5-x; the; 6-x; the; x; the; 7- the; the; a; 8-the; x; a; the; 9-the; x; x; x; x; the; the; 10-the; x; x; an; an; x; the; the.

p. 34 Ex. 3: 1-F; 2-T; 3-F; 4-T; 5-F; 6-F; 7-T; 8-T; 9-F; 10-T; 11-T; 12-F;13-F; 14-F ; 15-F; 16-T; 17-F.

p. 45-46 Ex. H: 1-would; 2- could have; 3- must; 4- should; 5- might; 6- should; 7- can; 8- must not; 9- may; 10- should; 11- can; 12- will; 13- could; 14- ought to; 15- should have; 16- ought to; 17- can; 18- ought to; 19- would; 20- could; 21- may; 22- must; 23- ought to; 24- should have; 25- ought to; 26- will; 27- should have; 28- ought to; 29- will; 30- could have.

p. 53-54 Ex. A

1. The legal conscience of a professional judge does not differ much from the conscience of a juror.
2. Judges are hostages to their own prejudices.
3. Trials by jury were introduced in modern Russia slowly and cautiously starting in 1993.
4. The verdicts of recent high-profile jury trials have provoked heated debates in

Russia.

5. Jurors generally tend to sympathize with defendants, and are not at all willing to deliver a verdict of guilty for people charged with ethnic crimes.

6. On November 20, 1864, Alexander II signed the main documents of Judicial Reform, known in history as Judicial Statutes.

7. What are the reasons for such an effectiveness of jury trials?

8. We should admit that the United States of America has given the most considerable support to judicial reform worldwide.

9. Who is eligible for jury duty?

10. An employer is not required to compensate the difference in pay for jury service.

11. You may be excused from jury service if you are over 70 years of age.

12. Does anyone screen grand jurors for biases or other improper factors?

13. The grand jury hears only cases brought to it by the prosecutor.

14. Can a lawyer be called to testify about his or her client?

15. In the federal system, a witness cannot have his or her lawyer present in the grand jury room.

16. The right to a fair trial has been defined in numerous regional and international human rights instruments.

17. All persons shall be equal before the courts and tribunals.

18. The right to a fair trial also embraces the right to confront and cross-examine witnesses.

19. The modern police service is a varied, multi-layered, responsive institution working to ensure your safety.

20. Should I report suspicious activity in my neighborhood?

21. How many MPs are there in the House of Commons?

22. The Prime Minister has announced that he will be taking a salary of £142,500.

23. Do opposition parties get financial help from Parliament?

24. The first civilizations generally did not distinguish between civil law and criminal law.

25. Many laws are enforced by threat of criminal punishment, and their particulars may vary widely from place to place.

26. Causation is not broken simply because a victim is particularly vulnerable.

p. 71-72 Ex.4: 1-would; 2-could; 3-may; 4-couldn't; 5-must; 6-mustn't; 7-should; 8- shouldn't; 9-must; 10-mustn't; 11-have to; 12-shouldn't; can; 13-has to; 14-doesn't have to; 15-mustn't; 16-should; 17-ought to; 18- need; 19- should; 20-ought to; 21- might; could; 22-mustn't.

p. 73 Ex. 6: 1-quite; 2-now; 3-patiently; 4-seldom; 5-absolutely; 6-often; 7-today; 8-therefore; 9-freely; 10-quite; 11-yesterday; 12-where; 13-why; 14-why; 15-quietly; 16-pleasantly; 17-too; 18-enough; 19-therefore.

p. 74 Ex.1: 1-didn't; 2-has; 3-had; 4-won't; 5-haven't; 6-are; 7-did; 8-doesn't; 9-isn't; 10-have; 11-don't; 12-won't; 13-had; 14-does; 15-are; 16-has; 17-didn't; 18-isn't; 19-have; had; 20-have; 21-do; 22-have; had; 23-do; 24-is; 25-do

p. 76 Ex. 3: 1-strictly; 2-gradually; 3-often; 4-never; 5-never; seriously; 6-badly;

7-hopefully; 8-severly; 9-clearly; normally; 10-immediately; 11-regularly; 12-always; pretty; normally; 13-briefly; 14-certainly; 15-absolutely; constantly; definitely; 16-deeply; usually; 17-directly; 18- occasionally; regularly; always

p. 77 Ex. 4: 1-was; 2-is; 3-were; 4-was; 5-had; be; 6-was; 7-has; 8-are; is; 9- are; 10- may; may; 11-are

p. 89 Ex. F: 1-bailiff; 2-technician; 3-dramatist; 4-beautician; 5-accountant; 6-idealist; 7-satirist; 8-essayist; 9-nutritionist; 10-physicist; 11-shoemaker; 12-policeman; 13-assistant; 14-guardian; 15-attorney; 16-mathematician; 17-dentist; 18-grammarian; 19-surgeon; 20-druggist; 21-physician; 22-solicitor; 23-bodyguard; 24-botanist; 25-interrogator; 26-barrister; 27-politician; 28-engineer; 29-referee; 30-paralegal.

p. 90 Ex. G: 1-8; 2-12; 3-10; 4-17; 5-2; 6-14; 7-1; 8-4; 9-22; 10-23; 11-20; 12-26; 13-6; 14-19; 15-25; 16-24; 17-28; 18-21; 19-30; 20-11; 21-32; 22-9; 23-7; 24-13; 25-29; 26-31; 27-5; 28-3; 29-27; 30-16; 31-18; 32-15

p. 91 Ex. H: 1-admits; 2-verify; 3-asserts; 4-explain; 5-confirm; 6-reports; 7-points out; 8-reassures; 9-claim; 10-criticize; 11-indicates; 12-compare; 13-informs; 14-mentions; 15-conclude

p. 92 Ex. I: 1-hardly ever; ever; 2-seldom; 3- rarely; often; frequently; 4-normally; 5- occasionally; often; regularly; 6-from time to time; always; 7-every now and again; 8-once in a while; 9-never; 10-infrequently; usually; 11-generally; 12-sometimes.

p. 97 Ex. A: 1-is opening; 2-are taking; 3-refuses; owe; have; 4-is acting; 5-is thinking; is changing; feels; 6-needs; are coming; works; 7- hurts; specializes; 8- am working; means; are joining; 9- works; acts; are buying; selling; 10- finishes; 11-influences; governs; 12- are speaking; divide; 13- involve; involve; have; 14-are starting; be claiming.

p. 103 Ex. G: 1-b; c; 2-a; 3-d; a; 4-a; 5-b; 6-c; 7-c; 8-d; b; 9-b; 10-b

p. 104 Ex. H: 1-e; 2-g; 3-a; 4-j; 5-i; 6-h; 7-c; 8-k; 9-d;10-p; 11-f; 12- 13-o; 14-l;15-m; 16-b

p. 105 Ex. I: 1-currently; 2-this morning; 3-usually; 4-only; at the moment; 5-tomorrow; 6-at present; 7-always; 8-never; 9-tonight; 10-constantly; 11-this year; 12-still; 13-now; nowadays; 14-this term; today; for a little while; 15-next week; soon.

p. 107 Ex. 1: 1-are doing; 2-am writing; 3-fly; 4-do apology; 5-am having; 6-am commuting; 7-is leading; 8-is decreasing; 9-are being kept off; are being restricted to; 10-makes; 11-are; 12-is; 13-think; 14-are; 15-am working; 16-know; 17-spend; 18-are; 19-am thinking; 20-runs; 21-going out; 22-seem; 23-knows; 24-is making; 25-know; 26-dislikes; 27-are cheating; 28-rumor; 29-is deceiving; 30-is dating; 31-are going on; 32-don` t know; 33-are; 34- am thinking; 35-hope

p. 108 Ex. 2: 1-a; 2-b; 3-d; 4-a; 5-b; 6-c; d; 7-a; 8-a; 9-a; d; 10-b; 11-d; d; 12-d

p. 111 Ex. 4: 1-g; 2-k; 3-o; 4-l; 5-i; 6-a; 7-b; 8-c; 9-f; 10-p; 11-d; 12-h; 13-j; 14-e; 15-q; 16-m; 17-n

p. 116 Ex. 4: 1-PS; 2-PC; 3-PS; PS; 4-PS; PS; 5-PC; PC ; 6-PS; 7-PC ; 8-PS ; 9-PC; 10-PS; PS; 11-PS; 12-PS; PS; PC; 13-PC; 14-PS; 15-PC; 16-PS

p. 117 Ex. 5: 1-f; 2-h; 3-i; 4-g; 5-b; 6-k; 7-e; 8-m; 9-d; 10-o; 11-a; 12-n; 13-r;

14-p; 15-q; 16-l; 17-j; 18-c

p. 139 Ex. H:

Across: 1-upheld; 3-cost; 7-overshot; 10-overcame; 12-rose; 14-dug; 15-struck; 20-ground; 21-threw; 24-put; 27-swore; 28-swung; 30-set; 31-dealt; 33-sang; 35-overtook; 36-spent; 38-rewound; 42-swept; 44-shot; 47-learnt; 48-unwove;

Down: 2- proved; 3-came; 4-told; 5-sent; 6-stood; 8-sprang; 9-shed; 11- chose; 13-sunburnt; 16-kept; 17-sat; 18-won; 19-unstrung; 21-taught; 22- retold; 23-woke; 25-mistook; 26-cut; 29-mislaid; 32-wore; 33-slung; 34- spit; 37-tore; 38-rang; 39-wept; 40-froze; 41-sold; 42-swam; 43- went; 45-saw; 46-ate

p. 140 Ex. I: 1-b; c; a; 2-c; 3-b; c; 4-b; 5-b; 6-c; b; 7-a; c; 8-b

p.141-142 Ex. J:1-last week; 2-sometimes; 3-for over 30 years; 4-rarely; 5-currently; 6- since 1977; 7-most often; 8-normally; 9-previously; 10-yesterday; 11-in the past several days; 12-long ago; 13-occasionally; 14-often; 15-never; 16-the past four years; 17-regularly; 18-early this morning; 19-last summer; before; 20-still; in the old days; 21- typically; 22- ordinarily; frequently

p. 143-144 Ex. K: 1-f; 2-d; 3-h; 4-e; 5-l; 6-n; 7-j; 8-o; 9-m; 10-g; 11-c; 12-i; 13-b; 14-k; 15-a

p. 144 Ex. L: 1-a; 2-b; c; 3-c; 4-b; 5-a; 6-b; 7-a

p. 147 Ex. A: 1-c; 2-k; 3-m; 4-o; 5-e; 6-l; 7-n; 8-b; 9-d; 10-a; 11-r; 12-q; 13-t; 14-g; 15-j ; 16-p; 17-f ; 18-s ; 19-i; 20-h

p. 150-151 Ex. C: 1-enjoyed; 2-sounds; 3-had; 4-started; 5-was; 6-had; 7-left; 8-arrived; 9- wasn't waiting; 10-rushed; 11-were trying; 12-met; 13- told; 14-had; 15-got; 16-were looking for; 17-directed; 18-was preparing; 19-hopped; 20-rushed; 21-were; 22-decided; 23-do not; 24-turned; 25-arrived; 26-is; 27-found; 28-was located; 29-stayed; 30-has; 31-swells; 32-were spending; 33-were reading; 34-were swimming; 35-were napping; 36-had; 37-took; 38-were staying; 39-woke up; 40-were planning; 41-was making; 42-said; 43-felt; 44-had; 45-got into; 46-found; 47-got; 48-needed; 49-came; 50-went; 51-decided; 52-was blowing; 53-didn't notice; 54-were walking; 55- stopped; 56-found; 57-decided; 58-would; 59-was boiling; 60- could; 61-saw; 62-were approaching; 63-thought; 64-would; 65-was; 66-hope; 67-give

p. 151 Ex. D: 1-was talking; got; escaped; 2-was preparing; 3- could; annoyed; 4-walked; were talking; were waiting; 5-were doing; started; 6-was driving; happened; 7-were taking; did cost; 8-gained; was working

p. 152 Ex. E: 1-o; 2-n; 3-k; 4-i; 5-g; 6-c; 7-e; 8-j; 9-d; 10-a; 11-b; 12-m; 13-h; 14-l; 15-f.

p. 156-157 Ex. H: 1-blackmail; 2-smuggling; 3-theft; 4-hooliganism; 5-kidnapping; 6-vandalism; 7-armed robbery; 8-forgery; 9-murder; 10-arson; 11-pickpocketing; 12-burglary;13-hijacking; 14-embezzlement; 15-fraud

p. 160-161 Ex. 1: 1- PC; PS; 2-PS; PS; PC; 3-PC; PS; 4-PS; PS; PS; 5-PS; PC; 6-PS; PC; 7-PC; 8-PS; PC; 9-PC; PC; PS; PC; 10-PS; PC; PC; PC; 11-PS; PS; PS; PS; PC;12-PS; PC; PC; PC; 13-PC; PS; 14-PC; PS; 15-PS; PS; PS; 16-PS; PS; PC; PS; PS; 17-PS; PC; 18-PS; PC; PC; PS; 19-PS; PS; PS; PS; PC; 20-PS; PS; PC; PS; 21-PS; PS; PS; PS; PC; 22-PS; PS; PC; 23-PC; PS; PS; 24-PC; PS; 25-PS; PC.

p. 168 Ex. 3: 1-reunited; was freed; 2-had been holding; threatened; was paid; 3-said; was; was covered; 4-didn't pay; agreed; 5-was snatched; smashed; drove; was standing; 6-was stabbed; was trying; was later taken; 7-contacted; demanded; 8-vowed; managed.

p. 169 Ex. 4: 1-happened; 2-ran; 3- stole; 4- saw; 5-were entering; 6- were carrying; 7- wearing; 8- attempted; 9- shot; 10-was having; 11- (was) recovering; 12- forced; 13-was taking place; 14-arrived; 15-had; 16-escaped; 17-found; 18-interrogated; 19-could; 20-arrested; 21-was spending; 22-(was) wasting; 23-handcuffed; 24-couldn't; 25-took; 26-asked

p. 170-171 Ex. 5: 1-came; woke; started; woke; came; said; said; didn't hear; was barking; went; telephoned; 2-heard; went; opened; didn't recognize; was not wearing; 3-escaped; was kept; was wearing; 4-was making; felt; brought; was able; 5-woke; got; went; bought; had to; grazed; was not chasing; made; was crossing; went; annoyed; began; was carrying; was raining; threw; ran; stopped; began; was doing; 6-was carrying; heard; 7-were driving; stopped; said; were looking; asked; could; 8- took; was tried; were listening; was listening; left; 9- was signing; remembered; had; 10-shared; were; was complaining; 11- arrived; was waiting; was wearing; looked; saw; waved; shouted; couldn't; was saying; were making; 12-saw; hurried; asked; was going; said; didn't speak; wasn't; 13- was swimming; stole; had to; 14- woke; said; thought; was trying; 15- didn't want; entered; decided; was crossing; stepped; fell; 16-was opening; heard; put; crawled; 17- was cleaning; went; killed; 18-realized; was travelling; 19-was standing; saw; saw; stopped; did damage; asked; ran; said; thought; resumed; were driving; were going; 20-were dancing; broke; stole; knew; was looking; hid; went; announced; called.

p. 174 Ex. B: 1-f; 2-m; 3-e; 4-o; 5-k; 6-b; 7-n; 8-j; 9-c; 10-h; 11-12-a; 13-g; 14-i; 15-d

p. 175-177 Ex. D: 1-a; 2-b; 3-c; 4-b; 5-b; 6-a; 7-a; 8-c; 9-b; 10-c; 11-b; 12-a; 13-a; 14-b; b; 15-c; 16-b; 17-b; b; 18-a; 19-c; 20-a; a

p. 182 Ex. G: 1-c; 2-h; 3-j; 4-f; 5-b; 6-a; 7-d; 8-t; 9-e; 10-k; 11-p; 12-g; 13-n; 14-l; 15-m; 16-o; 17-r; 18-i; 19-q; 20-s.

p.185 Ex. A: 1-FC; 2-FS; 3-FS; 4-FS; 5-FC; 6-FC; 7-FS; 8-FS; 9-FC; 10-FC; 11-FS; 12-FC; 13-FC; 14-FS; 15-FC; 16-FS; 17-FS; 18-FC; 19-FS; 20-FS; 21-FS; 22-FC; 23-FC; 24-FS; FC; 25-FS; 26-FS; 27-FC; 28-FC; 29-FS; 30-FS; 31-FS.

p.186 Ex. B: 1-b; 2-c; 3-b; 4-c; 5-a; 6-c; 7-c; 8-b; 9-c; 10-b; 11-c; 12-b; 13-a; 14-b; a; 15-both a and b

p.187 Ex. C: 1-f; 2-j; 3-m; 4-h; 5-b; 6-o; 7-n; 8-c; 9-d; 10-e; 11-l; 12-k; 13-g; 14-i; 15-a.

p. 188 Ex. D: 1-FC; 2-FC; FC; 3-FS; FS; PC; 4-PC; FS; 5-FS; FC; 6-FS; FC; 7-FS; FC; 8-FS; 9-FS; PC; FC; FC; 10-FS; 11-PC; PC; FS; 12-FC; 13-PC; PC; 14-PC; PC; PC; PC; PC; PC; PC; PC; PC; 15-FS; FC.

p. 194 Ex. J: 1-h; 2-k; 3-f; 4-m; 5-n; 6-j; 7-o; 8-a; 9-c; 10-e; 11-d; 12-b; 13-l; 14-g; 15-i.

p. 197 Ex. K: 1-g; 2-i; 3-l; 4-j; 5-b; 6-e; 7-n; 8-d; 9-k; 10-c; 11-o; 12-h; 13-f; 14-m; 15-a

p. 195 Ex. L: 1) conduct – behavior; 2) wrong – misdeed; 3) to advance - to accelerate; 4) to perform – to carry out; 5) significantly – considerably; 6) to determine – to conclude; 7) (to) vary – (to) change; 8) to refer to - to relate to; 9) corporate – associated; 10) qualified – authorized; 11) different – another; 12) (to) call – (to) entitle; 13) loosely – generally; 14) broad – extended; 15) variety – range; 16) practitioners – specialists; 17) licensed – certified; 18) on behalf of – in support of; 19) colloquially – informally; 20) prescribed – designated; 21) specific – limited; 22) generic – common; 23) support – assistance; 24) generally - in most cases; 25) comparable – analogous.

p. 208 Ex. 1: 1-b; 2-a; 3-b; 4-a; 5-b; 6-b; 7-b; 8-b; 9-b; 10-a; 11-a; 12-a; a; b; 13-a.

p. 209 Ex. 2: 1- will; 2- is going to; 3- am going to; 4- will; 5- will; 6- is going to; 7- are going to; 8- will; 9- will; are not going to; 10-are going to; 11-will; are going to; 12- am going to; 13-are going to; 14-will; 15- is going to; 16- will; 17-will; 18- will; 19-is going to.

p. 212 Ex. 8: 1-FC; 2-FS; 3-FC; 4-FS; FS; FS; 5-FS; 6-FC; 7-FS; FS; 8-FS; 9-FC; 10-FS; 11-FC; 12-FC; 13-FS; 14-15-FC; 16-FS; 17-FC.

p. 214 Ex. 1: 1-a; 2-b; a; a; a; a; a; a; 3-b; a; b; b; b; 4-b; 5-b; 6-b

p. 215 Ex. 2: 1-FS; 2-FS; 3-FC; FS; 4-FC; 5-FS; 6-FS; FS; 7-FC; FS; 8-FS; FS; 9-FS; FS; 10-FS.

p. 216 Ex.3: 1-h; 2-p; 3-k; 4-f; 5-a; 6-n; 7-i; 8-o; 9-m; 10-b; 11-q; 12-g; 13-c; 14-e; 15-d;16-r; 17-j; 18-l.

p. 218 Ex. 1:

John has always traveled a lot. In fact, he was only two years old when he first flew to the US. His mother is Italian and his father is American. John was born in France, but his parents had met in Cologne, Germany after they had been living there for five years. They met one day while John's father was reading a book in the library and his mother sat down beside him. Anyway, John travels a lot because his parents also travel a lot. As a matter of fact, John is visiting his parents in France at the moment. He lives in New York now, but has been visiting his parents for the past few weeks. He really enjoys living in New York, but he also loves coming to visit his parents at least once a year. This year he has flown over 50,000 miles for his job. He is working for Jackson & Co. He's pretty sure that he'll be working for them next year as well. His job requires a lot of travel. In fact, by the end of this year, he'll have traveled over 120,000 miles! His next journey will be to Australia. He really doesn't like going to Australia because it is so far. This time he is going to fly from Paris after a meeting with the company's French partner. He'll be sitting for over 18 hours at the airport and on the airplane until his plane arrives! John was talking with his parents earlier this evening when his girlfriend from New York telephoned to let him know that Jackson & Co. had decided to merge with a company in Australia. The two companies were constantly negotiating the past month or so, so it really wasn't much of a surprise. Of course, this means that John will have to catch the next plane back to New York. He'll be meeting with his boss at this time tomorrow.

p. 219 Ex. 2: 1-b; 2-b; d; 3-c; a; c; 4-d; c; 5-c; 6-a; c; 7-d; 8-b; d; 9-a.

References - Список использованной литературы:

Энциклопедии:

1. Asher, R. E. (ed.) Encyclopedia of Language and Linguistics. Oxford: Pergamon Press, 1994 [10 vols].
2. Barnouw, Erik (ed.) International Encyclopedia of Communications. New York: Oxford University Press, 1989 [4 vols].
3. Bouissac, Paul (ed.) Encyclopedia of Semiotics. New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.
4. Bright, William (ed.) International Encyclopedia of Linguistics. New York: Oxford University Press, 1992 [4 vols].
5. Byram, Michael (ed.) Routledge Encyclopedia of Language Teaching and Learning . London: Routledge, 2000.
6. Crystal, David (ed.) The Cambridge Encyclopedia of Language. 2nd ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1997.
7. Fabbro, Franco (ed.) Concise Encyclopedia of Language Pathology. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1999.
8. Hornberger, Nancy H. and Corson, David (ed.) Encyclopedia of Language and Education, Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic, 1997 [8 vols].
9. Malmkjaer, Kirsten (ed.) The Linguistics Encyclopedia, London: Routledge, 2002.
10. Price, Glanville (ed.) Encyclopedia of the Languages of Europe, Oxford: Blackwell, 1998.
11. Sawyer, John F. A. (ed.) Concise Encyclopedia of Language and Religion, Amsterdam: Elsevier, 2001.
12. Spolsky, Bernard (ed.) Concise Encyclopedia of Educational Linguistics, Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1999.

Словари:

1. Concise Oxford English Dictionary. — 11th ed. / Edited by Catherine Soanes, Angus Stevenson. Oxford University Press, 2004.
2. Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary. — 11th ed. — Springfield: Merriam-Webster, Incorporated, 2005.
3. Bussman, Hadumod Routledge, Dictionary of Language and Linguistics. London: Routledge, 1996.
4. Colby, Anita Thesaurus of Linguistic Indexing Terms. 2nd ed. San Diego: Sociological Abstracts, 1998.
5. Crystal, David A Dictionary of Linguistics and Phonetics . 5th ed. Oxford: Blackwell, 2003.
6. Dalby, Andrew The Dictionary of Languages. New York: Columbia University Press, 1998.
7. Jung, Heidrun, The Dictionary of Acronyms and Abbreviations in Applied Linguistics and Language Learning, 1991 [2 vols].

8. Trask, R. L. A Dictionary of Phonetics and Phonology. London: Routledge, 1996.
9. Trask, R. L. A Student's Dictionary of Language and Linguistics. London: Arnold, 1997.
10. Trask, R. L. The Dictionary of Historical and Comparative Linguistics. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press, 2000.
11. Trask, R. L. The Penguin Dictionary of English Grammar, Penguin, 2005
12. Wales, Katie A Dictionary of Stylistics. London: Longman, 1989.
13. Wierzbicka, Anna, English Speech Act Verbs: a semantic dictionary. NY: Academic Press, 1989.

Учебники и учебные пособия:

1. Azar Schramper, Betty, Basic English Grammar, Pearson ESL; 2 ed, 2000
2. Azar Schramper, Betty, Longman Fundamentals English Grammar, Longman Press, 2003
3. Azar Schramper, Betty, Understanding and Using English Grammar, Longman, 2002
4. Batko, Ann, When Bad Grammar Happens to Good People, Career Press, 2004
5. Brown, Gould, The Grammar of English Grammars, Project Gutenberg, 2004
6. Bryan A. Garner, Jeff Newman, Tiger Jackson, The Redbook: A Manual on Legal Style, West Group, 2002
7. Matteson, Claus, 37 Things to Know About English Grammar, Canon Press, 2004
8. Hashemi, Louise with Murphy, Raymond, English Grammar in Use: Supplementary Exercises, Cambridge University Press, 2008
9. Jake Allsop, Peter Watcyn-Jones, Test Your Grammar and Usage for FCE, Pearson Education Limited, 2002
10. Maurer, Jay, Longman Focus on Grammar Workbook 3 (Intermediate), Longman Pearson Education, 2000
11. Miller, Larry S. Report Writing for Criminal Justice Professionals, Third Edition, Anderson, 2006
12. Murphy, Raymond, English Grammar in Use-Reference and Practice for Intermediate Students of English, Cambridge University Press, 2003
13. Murphy, Raymond, English Grammar In Use with Answers, Cambridge University Press, 2010 ISBN 0521537622 978-0-521-53762-9
14. Woods, Geraldine English Grammar For Dummies, For Dummies; 2 edition, 2010 ISBN-10: 0470546646
15. Philips, Deborah, Longman - Grammar, TOEFL, Longman, 2008
16. Vince, Michael, Macmillan English Grammar in context. Intermediate, Macmillan, 2008
17. Woolard, George, Grammar With Laughter, Language Teaching Publications, 1999



What you should know and how much you'd score:

Rubrics// Exercises to fulfill// Tests to pass// Records to be kept*	Importance level	Total 100% Suffice 70%	Best 100% Least 40%
Grammar Rules: Articles	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	328/230	328/132
Grammar Rules: Nouns	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	165/115	165/66
Your Self - assessment Test 1	high +	115/80	115/46
Your Teacher's assessment Test 1	high +	116/82	116/47
Grammar Rules: Auxiliary verbs	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	127/89	127/51
Grammar Rules: Word order	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	158/110	158/64
Your Self - assessment Test 2	high +	98/69	98/40
Your Teacher's assessment Test 2	high +	99/70	99/41
Grammar Rules: Present Simple	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	199/140	199/80
Grammar Rules: Present Continuous	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	157/110	157/63
Your Self - assessment Test 3	high +	95/67	95/38
Your Teacher's assessment Test 3	high +	76/53	76/31
Grammar Rules: Past Simple Tense	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	229/160	229/92
Grammar Rules: Past Continuous	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	240/ 168	240/96
Your Self - assessment Test 4	high +	162/113	162/65
Your Teacher's assessment Test 4	high +	217/152	217/87
Grammar Rules: Future Simple	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	147/103	147/59
Grammar Rules: Future Continuous	high	all	100/50
Your Training Exercises	medium	281/197	281/113
Active sentences/ passive/ sentences/ synonyms/ antonyms/ suffixes/ prefixes/ compound words	medium	General knowledge is required	30%
Your Self - assessment Test 5	high +	122/85	122/49
Your Teacher's assessment Test 5	high +	68/48	68/28
Your Final Evaluation Test 1	high +	82/58	82/33

*Keep records of your achievements / Fill in your self-assessment list regularly / Attach your assessment list and exercise files to your E-portfolio case-file (all templates are available at your English professor or tutor department).

